

# DocuPrint CP405 d



## User Guide

Bonjour, ColorSync, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Macintosh, Mac OS, and TrueType are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Adobe, Acrobat, Photoshop, PostScript, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

PCL is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows Vista, Windows, Windows Server, and Internet Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.


Novell is a registered trademark and SUSE is a trademark of Novell, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Red Hat and Red Hat Enterprise Linux are registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

RSA, BSAFE are either registered trademarks or trademarks of EMC Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Wi-Fi Protected Setup, WPA, and WPA2 are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

All product/brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol . Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.

It may be a legal offence to print currency notes, certificates of stocks and securities, or any other documents of similar nature, regardless of whether they will be used.

The data saved in the hard disk of the machine may be lost if there is any problem in the hard disk. Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any direct and indirect damages arising from or caused by such data loss.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

**IMPORTANT:**

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.
  2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
  3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.
  4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.
- An export of this product is strictly controlled in accordance with Laws concerning Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade of Japan and/or the export control regulations of the United States.

XEROX, the sphere of connectivity design, and DocuPrint are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xerox Corporation in the U.S. or Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

All Xerox and Fuji Xerox product names are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Xerox Corporation or Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

# Preface

---

Thank you for purchasing the DocuPrint CP405 d.

This guide is intended for users who use the printer for the first time, and provides all the necessary operating information about the print function.

Please read this guide to achieve the best performance from this printer.

This guide assumes you are familiar with computers and the basics of network operation and configuration.

After reading this guide, keep it safe and handy for future reference.





# Contents

Preface .....	3
Types of Manuals .....	11
Using This Guide .....	12
Organization.....	12
Conventions .....	12
Safety Notes .....	13
Electrical Safety .....	14
Machine Installation .....	16
Operational Safety .....	18
Consumable .....	20
Warning and Caution Labels.....	21
Environment.....	22
Regulation.....	23
About License .....	24
Illegal Copies and Printouts .....	25
Product Features .....	26
<b>1 Specifications .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>2 Basic Operation.....</b>	<b>31</b>
Main Components .....	32
Front View .....	32
Rear View.....	33
Operator Panel.....	34
Installing Optional Accessories.....	35
Installing the Optional 512MB Memory .....	35
Installing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder.....	40
Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter.....	45
Installing the Optional Hard Disk Unit .....	50
Turning on the Printer.....	55
Printing a Panel Settings Page.....	56
Power Saver Mode .....	57
Exiting the Power Saver Mode.....	57
<b>3 Printer Management Software.....</b>	<b>59</b>
Print Drivers .....	60
CentreWare Internet Services .....	61
Creating an Administrative Password .....	61
SimpleMonitor (Windows Only) .....	62
Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only) .....	63
<b>4 Printer Connection and Software Installation .....</b>	<b>65</b>

Overview of Network Setup and Configuration.....	66
Connecting Your Printer .....	67
Connecting Printer to Computer or Network .....	67
Setting the IP Address .....	69
TCP/IP and IP Addresses .....	69
Setting the Printer's IP Address through the Driver CD Kit .....	69
Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address .....	70
Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode) .....	71
Verifying the IP Settings .....	72
Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page .....	72
Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows .....	73
Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (For Network Connection Setup) .....	73
Inserting the CD-ROM.....	75
USB Connection Setup .....	75
Network Connection Setup .....	78
Setting Up for Shared Printing .....	84
Point and Print.....	86
Peer-to-Peer.....	90
Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X .....	95
Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Linux (CUPS) .....	96
Installing the Print Driver .....	96
Setting Up the Queue.....	97
Setting the Default Queue .....	98
Specifying the Printing Options .....	99
Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator .....	100
Uninstalling the Print Driver.....	101
Configuring Wireless Settings (Windows & Mac OS X).....	102
<b>5    Printing Basics .....</b>	<b>113</b>
About Print Media .....	114
Print Media Usage Guidelines.....	114
Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer .....	115
Print Media Storage Guidelines .....	115
Supported Print Media .....	116
Usable Print Media .....	116
Standard Paper and Tested Paper .....	118
Loading Print Media.....	120
Capacity .....	120
Print Media Dimensions .....	120
Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder .....	121
Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray .....	124
Setting Paper Sizes and Types .....	128
Setting Paper Sizes.....	128
Setting Paper Types.....	128
Printing .....	129
Sending a Job to Print.....	129
Canceling a Print Job .....	130

Using the Stored Print Feature.....	131
Printing PDF Files Using PDF Bridge (Windows Only) .....	133
Duplex Printing .....	135
Selecting Printing Options .....	137
Printing Custom Size Paper .....	140
Auditron.....	144
Checking Status of Print Data .....	145
Printing With AirPrint .....	145
Printing a Report Page.....	146
Printer Settings.....	147
Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD) .....	148
Adding Roles of Print Services.....	148
Printer Setup .....	149
Using Digital Certificates .....	150
Managing Certificates .....	150
Setting the Features.....	156
<b>6 Using the Operator Panel Menus.....</b>	<b>163</b>
Understanding the Printer Menus .....	164
Report / List.....	164
Meter Readings .....	165
Admin Menu .....	165
Tray Settings .....	190
Panel Lock Function .....	196
Enabling the Panel Lock .....	196
Disabling the Panel Lock.....	196
Setting the Power Saver Time Option .....	197
Resetting to Factory Defaults .....	198
<b>7 Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>199</b>
Clearing Jams.....	200
Avoiding Jams .....	200
Identifying the Location of Paper Jams .....	201
Clearing Paper Jams From the Bypass Tray .....	202
Clearing Paper Jams From the Standard 550 Sheet Tray .....	204
Clearing Paper Jams From the Fusing Unit.....	206
Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder .....	209
Jam Problems .....	211
Basic Printer Problems .....	215
Display Problems.....	216
Printing Problems .....	217
Print Quality Problems.....	218
The Output Is Too Light .....	219
Toner Smears or Print Comes Off.....	220
Random Spots/Blurred Images .....	221
The Entire Output Is Blank .....	222
Streaks Appear on the Output.....	223
Part or the Entire Output Is Black.....	223

Pitched Color Dots .....	224
Vertical Blanks .....	225
Mottle .....	225
Ghosting .....	226
Light-Induced Fatigue .....	226
Fog .....	227
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO).....	227
Jagged Characters .....	228
Banding .....	229
Auger Mark.....	229
Wrinkled/Stained Paper .....	230
Damage on the Leading Edge of Paper.....	231
The Top and Side Margins Are Incorrect .....	231
Color Registration Is out of Alignment.....	232
Protrudent/Bumpy Paper.....	232
Images Are Skewed .....	233
Noise .....	234
Adjusting Color Registration .....	235
Performing Auto Adjust .....	235
Printing the Color Registration Chart .....	235
Determining Values .....	236
Entering Values.....	238
Digital Certificate Problem .....	239
Problems With Installed Optional Accessories .....	240
Other Problems .....	241
Understanding Printer Messages .....	242
Contacting Service .....	244
Getting Help.....	245
LCD Panel Messages .....	245
SimpleMonitor Alerts .....	245
Obtaining the Product Information .....	245
Non-Genuine Mode .....	246
<b>8 Maintenance.....</b>	<b>247</b>
Cleaning the Printer .....	248
Cleaning Inside the Printer .....	248
Replacing Consumables.....	256
Replacing the Toner Cartridges .....	257
Replacing the Drum Cartridges .....	260
Replacing the Fusing Unit .....	266
Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller .....	269
Replacing the Waste Toner Box .....	278
Ordering Supplies .....	281
Consumables .....	281
When to Order Supplies.....	282
Recycling Supplies.....	282
Storing Print Media .....	283
Storing Consumables .....	284

Managing the Printer .....	285
Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services .....	285
Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor (Windows Only).....	285
Conserving Supplies.....	286
Checking Page Counts .....	287
Moving the Printer .....	288
Removing Options .....	289
Removing the Optional 512MB Memory .....	289
Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder .....	292
Removing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter.....	294
Removing the Optional Hard Disk Unit .....	296
Contacting Fuji Xerox .....	299
Technical Support.....	300
Online Services .....	301
Index.....	303



# Types of Manuals

---

## Manuals included with the printer

The following manuals are provided with the DocuPrint CP405 d.

Lifting Your Printer	Describes how to lift and hold your printer.
Safety Guide	Describes the information you need to know before using the printer and to operate the printer safely.
Setup Guide	Provides step-by-step instructions on how to set up your printer.
Operator Panel Guide	Describes the icons assigned to the buttons or indicators on the operator panel.
User Guide (this guide)	Describes how to get ready to print and set various features. It also covers the operator panel menus, troubleshooting tips, and maintenance information. This guide is on the <i>Driver CD Kit</i> .
PostScript User Guide	Describes how to set up your printer as a PostScript® printer and the features that can be configured on your print driver. This guide is on the <i>PostScript Driver Library CD</i> .

## Manuals included with an optional accessory

The following manual is provided with the optional accessories (sold separately).

Installation Guide	Optional accessories that require an installation at the customer's site are provided with an Installation Guide.
--------------------	---

# Using This Guide

This section includes:

- "Organization" on page 12
- "Conventions" on page 12

## ■ Organization

This guide is organized into the following chapters. The summary of each chapter is as follows:

<a href="#">1 Specifications</a>	Describes the printer specifications.
<a href="#">2 Basic Operation</a>	Describes the main components of the printer, the power saver mode, and the preparation of the printer to use.
<a href="#">3 Printer Management Software</a>	Describes the software available for the printer.
<a href="#">4 Printer Connection and Software Installation</a>	Describes the basic information about how to connect the printer to your computer via the network or USB and how to install the print driver.
<a href="#">5 Printing Basics</a>	Describes the supported paper, how to load paper, and how to print data using various print features.
<a href="#">6 Using the Operator Panel Menus</a>	Describes the setting items available on the operator panel, and their setup procedures.
<a href="#">7 Troubleshooting</a>	Describes the troubleshooting tips for printer problems such as paper jams.
<a href="#">8 Maintenance</a>	Describes how to clean the printer, how to replace consumables, and how to see the printer status.
<a href="#">9 Contacting Fuji Xerox</a>	Describes support information.

## ■ Conventions

1 In this guide, personal computers and workstations are collectively called “computers”.

2 The following terms are used throughout this guide:

### IMPORTANT:

- Important information that must be read and followed.

### NOTE:

- Additional information that merits emphasis.

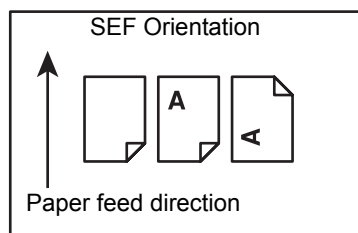
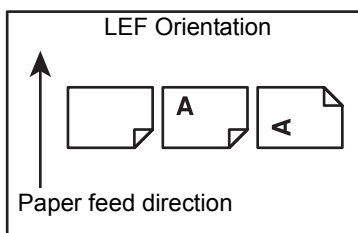
### See also:

- References within this guide.

3 Orientation of paper is described in this guide as follows:

☐, ☐, Long Edge Feed (LEF): Loading the paper in landscape orientation.

☐, ☐, Short Edge Feed (SEF): Loading the paper in portrait orientation.






# Safety Notes





























































Before using this product, read “Safety Notes” carefully for safety use.

This product and recommended supplies have been tested and found to comply with strict safety requirements including safety agency approvals and compliance with environmental standards. Follow the following instructions for safety use.

 **WARNING:**

- Any unauthorized alteration including an addition of new functions or connection to external devices may not be covered by the product warranty. Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for more information.

Follow all warning instructions marked on this product. The warning marks stand for the followings:

 <b>DANGER</b>	Used for item that if not followed strictly, can lead death or severe or fatal injuries and the possibility to do it is comparatively high.																
 <b>WARNING</b>	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can lead to severe or fatal injuries.																
 <b>CAUTION</b>	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can cause injuries to user or damages to machine.																
<p> : A symbol for items to pay attention to when handling machine. Follow instructions carefully to use machine safely.</p>																	
<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Static Sensitive</td> <td>Caution</td> <td>Flammable</td> <td>Explosive</td> <td>Electric shock</td> <td>Heated surface</td> <td>Moving object</td> <td>Pinched fingers</td> </tr> </table>										Static Sensitive	Caution	Flammable	Explosive	Electric shock	Heated surface	Moving object	Pinched fingers
																	
Static Sensitive	Caution	Flammable	Explosive	Electric shock	Heated surface	Moving object	Pinched fingers										
<p> : A symbol for prohibited items. Follow instructions carefully to avoid any dangerous acts.</p>																	
<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prohibited</td> <td>No fire</td> <td>Do not touch</td> <td>Do not use in bathroom</td> <td>Do not tear down</td> <td>Keep away from wet</td> <td>Never touch with wet hand</td> </tr> </table>									Prohibited	No fire	Do not touch	Do not use in bathroom	Do not tear down	Keep away from wet	Never touch with wet hand		
																	
Prohibited	No fire	Do not touch	Do not use in bathroom	Do not tear down	Keep away from wet	Never touch with wet hand											
<p> : A symbol for items that must be performed. Follow instructions carefully to carry out these essential tasks.</p>																	
<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Instructions</td> <td>Unplug</td> <td>Ground/Earth</td> </tr> </table>					Instructions	Unplug	Ground/Earth										
																	
Instructions	Unplug	Ground/Earth															

# ■ Electrical Safety

## WARNING

This product shall be operated by the power source as indicated on the product's data plate. Consult your local power company to check if your power source meets the requirements.



### WARNING:

- **Connect this product to a protective earth circuit.**

This product is supplied with a plug that has a protective earth pin. The plug fits only into an earthed electrical outlet. This is a safety feature. If the plug doesn't fit to the outlet, contact an electrician to replace the outlet to avoid risk of electric shock. Never use an earthed adapter plug to connect the product to the electrical outlet that has no earth connection terminal.

Improper connection of a grounding conductor may cause electric shock.



Plug the power cord directly into a grounded electrical outlet. To prevent overheating and a fire accident, do not use an extension cord, a multi-plug adaptor or a multiple connector. Consult your local Fuji Xerox representative to check if an outlet is grounded.



Connect this product to a branch circuit or an outlet that has larger capacity than the rated ampere and voltage of this product. See the data plate on the rear panel of this product for its rated ampere and voltage.



Never touch the power cord with wet hands. It may cause electric shock.



Do not put an object on the power cord.



Always keep the plug connection free of dust. The dusty and damp environment may bring about minute electric current in a connector. It may generate heat and eventually cause a fire accident.



To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, only use the power cord supplied with this product or the ones designated by Fuji Xerox.

The power cord is exclusive use for this product. Do not use it for any other product.

Do not damage or alter the power cord. Damage and alteration may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

If the power cord is damaged or insulated wires are exposed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its replacement. Do not use a damaged or uninsulated cord to avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident.

## CAUTION



When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.



Do not unplug or re-plug this product with the switch on. Plugging and unplugging a live connector may deform the plug and generate heat, and eventually cause a fire accident.



Hold the plug not the cord when unplugging this product, or it may damage the cord and cause electric shock or a fire accident.



Always switch off and unplug the machine when it is not used over weekends or long holidays. It may cause deterioration of insulations and eventually electric shock or a fire accident.



Once a month, switch off this product and check if

- the power cord is plugged firmly into an electrical outlet;
- the plug is not excessively heated, rusted or bent;
- the plug and electrical outlet are free of dust; and
- the power cord is not cracked or worn down.

Once you notice any unusual condition, switch off and unplug this product first and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

---

## ■ Machine Installation

### ⚠ WARNING



Do not locate this product where people might step on or trip over the power cord. Friction or excessive pressure may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

### ⚠ CAUTION



Never locate this product in the following places:

- Near radiators or any other heat sources
- Near volatile flammable materials such as curtains
- In the hot, humid, dusty or poorly ventilated environment
- In the place receiving direct sunlight
- Near cookers or humidifiers



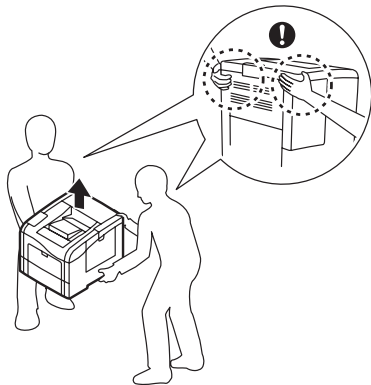
Never put this product close to fire such as candles and cigarettes. Otherwise, it may cause a fire accident.



This product weighs 25.2 Kg (the main unit with consumables). When moving it, always carry it by a team of two or more persons to avoid mishandling or injury.



When lifting this product, hold the handholds on both sides and the rear of the product with two people as shown below. Never lift it by gripping any other areas. It will prevent you from dropping the product and getting back ache or injuries.

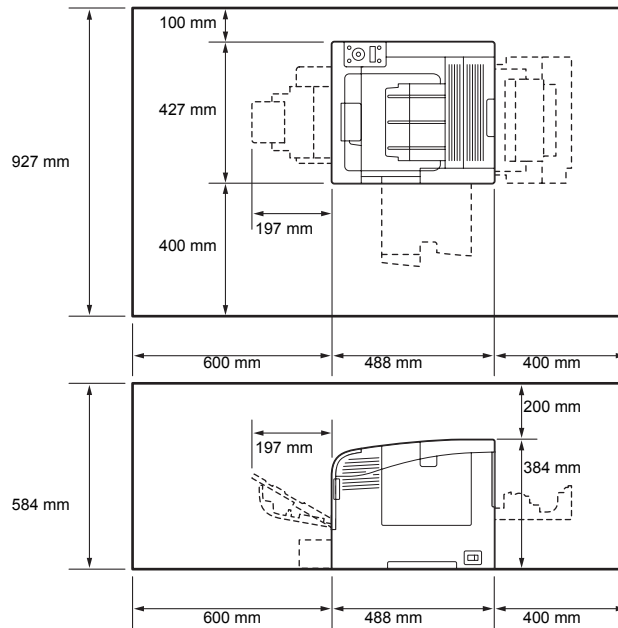


Locate this product on a level and sturdy surface that can withstand a weight of 28.0 Kg. Otherwise, if tilted, the product may fall over and cause injuries.

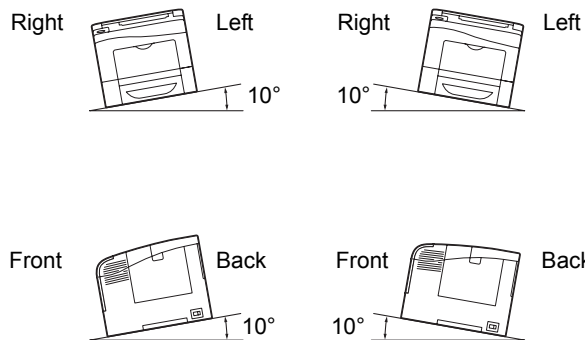


Locate this product in a well-ventilated area. Do not obstruct ventilation openings of the product.

Keep the minimum clearance as follows for ventilation and an access to the power plug. Unplug the product if an abnormal condition is noted.



Do not incline the product at more than 10 degree angle. Otherwise, it may fall over and cause injuries.



Always lock the wheels of this product after installation. Otherwise, it may fall over or slide and cause injuries.



Always locate the output unit inside the rack under the scanning unit.

## Others



To keep this product in a good performance and condition, always use it in the following environment:

- Temperature: 10 – 32 °C
- Humidity: 10 – 85%

When the product is left in a chilly room and the room is rapidly warmed up by heater, dew condensation may form inside the product and cause a partial deletion on printing.

# ■ Operational Safety

## ⚠ WARNING



The operator's product maintenance procedures are described in the customer documentation supplied with this product. Do not carry out any other maintenance procedures not described in the documentation.



This product features safety design not to allow operators access to hazard areas. The hazard areas are isolated from operators by covers or protectors which require a tool to remove. To prevent electric shock and injuries, never remove those covers and protectors.



To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, switch off and unplug the product promptly in the following conditions, then contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

- The product emits smoke or its surface is unusually hot.
- The product emits unusual noise or odor.
- The power cord is cracked or worn down.
- A circuit breaker, fuse or any other safety device becomes activated.
- Any liquid is spilled into the product.
- The product is soaked in water.
- Any part of the product is damaged.



Do not insert any object into slots or openings of this product.

Do not put any of the followings on the product:

- Liquid container such as flower vases or coffee cups
- Metal parts such as staples or clips
- Heavy objects

If liquid is spilled over or metal parts are slipped into the product, it may cause electric shock or a fire accident.



Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.



When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners to avoid catching fire and explosion.



Never play the CD-ROM supplied with the product on an audio player. Always use a CD-ROM player. Otherwise, large sound may damage audio players or your ears.



Laser Safety

**CAUTION:**

- **Any operations or adjustments not stated in the operation manual may cause hazardous light exposure and eventually burn injuries or loss of eyesight.**

This product has been tested and found to comply with the Class 1 Laser Equipment requirements defined by the international standard IEC60825 and has no light exposure hazard. The product has no hazardous light emission as it features light protection components and covers to shut in all light beam during operation and maintenance.

## ⚠ CAUTION



Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product.

To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.



Keep electrical and mechanical safety interlocks active. Keep the safety interlocks away from magnetic materials. Magnetic materials may accidentally activate the product and cause injuries or electric shock.



Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



Ventilate well during extended operation or mass printing. It may affect the office air environment due to odor such as ozone in a poorly ventilated room. Provide proper ventilation to ensure the comfortable and safe environment.

---

## ■ Consumable

### WARNING



---

Store all consumables in accordance with the instructions given on its package or container.



---

Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



---

Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.

If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.



---

Never throw a waste toner bottle into an open flame. Toner may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.

If you have a used waste toner bottle no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.



---

**CAUTION: RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.**

---

### CAUTION



---

Keep drum cartridges and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.



---

When replacing drum cartridges and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.



---

If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.

If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.

If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.

If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

---

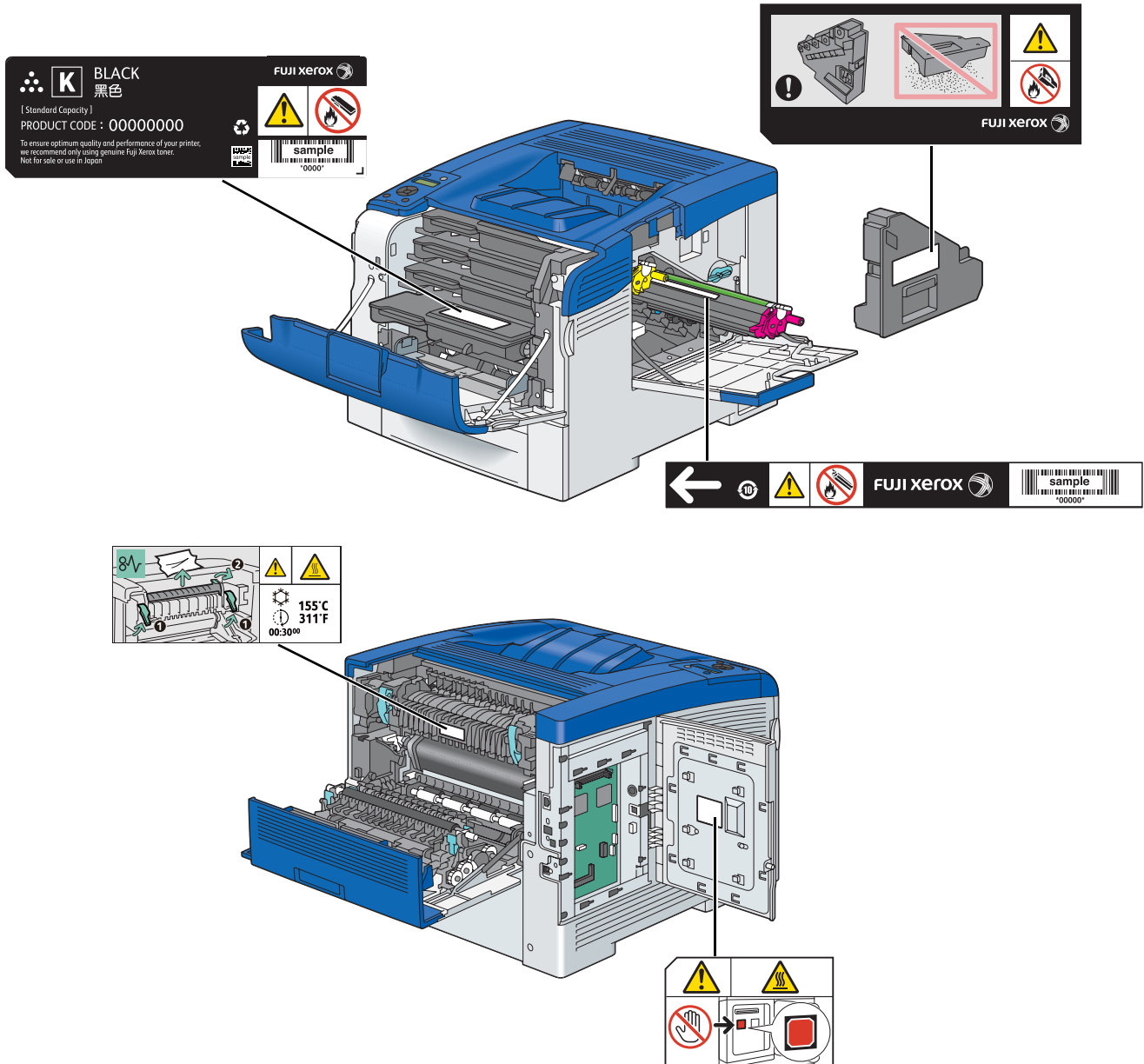


# Warning and Caution Labels

Be sure to follow the warning and caution labels placed on the machine. Do not touch areas with labels indicating high voltage or temperature. This can cause an electric shock or burn.

**CAUTION:**

- Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product. To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.



# Environment

---

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.
- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors). Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

# Regulation

---

## ■ Radio Frequency Emissions (Class B)



This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to the International Standard for Electromagnetic Interference (CISPR Publ. 22) and Radiocommunications Act 1992 in Australia/New Zealand. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning this product off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between this product and the receiver.
- Connect this product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes and modifications to this product not specifically approved by Fuji Xerox may void the user's authority to operate this product.

---

## ■ Product Safety Certification (UL, CB)

This product is certified by the following agency using the safety standards listed.

Standard  
IEC60950-1:ed. 2

# About License

---

## **RSA BSAFE**

This product includes RSA BSAFE® Cryptographic software from EMC Corporation.



## **DES**

This product includes software developed by Eric Young.

(eay@mincom.oz.au)

## **AES**

Copyright© 2003, Dr BrianGladman, Worcester, UK. All rights reserved. This product uses published AES software provided by Dr Brian Gladman under BSD licensing terms.

## **TIFF(libtiff)**

LibTIFF Copyright© 1988-1997 SamLeffler

Copyright© 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

## **ICC Profile (Little cms)**

Littlecms Copyright© 1998-2004 Marti Maria

## **JPEG**

Our printer software uses some of the codes defined by the Independent JPEG Group.

# Illegal Copies and Printouts

---

Copying or printing certain documents may be illegal in your country. Penalties of fines or imprisonment may be imposed on those found guilty. The following are examples of items that may be illegal to copy or print in your country.

- Currency
- Banknotes and checks
- Bank and government bonds and securities
- Passports and identification cards
- Copyright material or trademarks without the consent of the owner
- Postage stamps and other negotiable instruments

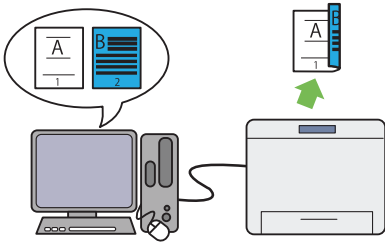
This list is not inclusive and no liability is assumed for either its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, contact your legal counsel.

# Product Features

---

This section describes the product features and indicates their links.

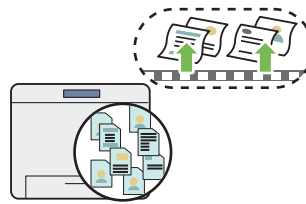
## 2-Sided Print



The 2-Sided Print feature is to print two or more pages on the front and back side of a single sheet of paper. This feature helps reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see ["Duplex Printing" on page 135](#).

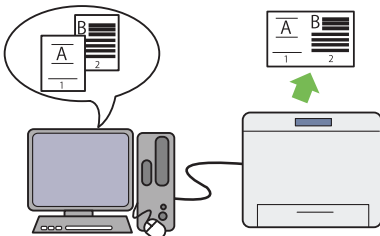
## Stored Print



The Stored Print feature allows you to temporarily store your print data in the printer memory and output it later. You can effectively manage your time when you print confidential data or large-volume data at off-peak hours.

For more information, see ["Using the Stored Print Feature" on page 131](#).

## Pages Per Sheet (N-Up) Print






The Pages Per Sheet (N-Up) feature allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature helps reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see the print driver's help.

# Specifications

This chapter lists the main specifications of the printer. Note that the specifications of the product may change without prior notice.

Items	Description
Product Code	DocuPrint CP405 d 220 V: TL500298 DocuPrint CP405 d 110 V: TL500287
Type	Desktop
Printing method	Laser Xerography <b>IMPORTANT:</b> • Laser + electrophotographic system
Fusing system	Thermal fusing system
Warm-up Time	19.9 seconds or less (after powering on at 20 °C temperature)
Continuous print speed* <sup>1</sup>	Color 1 Sided* <sup>2</sup> : 35 sheets/minute; 2 Sided* <sup>3</sup> : 23 pages/minute Monochrome 1 Sided* <sup>2</sup> : 35 sheets/minute; 2 Sided* <sup>3</sup> : 23 pages/minute <b>IMPORTANT:</b> * <sup>1</sup> Print speed may decrease due to factors such as paper type, paper size, and printing conditions. Print speed may also decrease for image quality adjustment. * <sup>2</sup> When continuously printing a single document of A4  plain paper. * <sup>3</sup> A4  continuous printing
First print	14.0 seconds (A4  ) <b>IMPORTANT:</b> • Measurements based on Fuji Xerox test pattern. Time from printer receiving print job until output of the first page is complete. • In the case of feeding paper from standard tray. Numerics depend on the output environment.
Resolution	600 × 600 dpi, 1,200 × 1,200 dpi (half speed)
Tone/Color	256 tones/color (16.7 million colors)
Paper Size	Standard 550 Sheet Tray: A4, B5, A5, Letter (8.5 × 11"), Executive (7.25 × 10.5"), Folio (8.5 × 13"), Legal (8.5 × 14"), Custom Paper (Width: 148 – 215.9 mm, Length: 210 – 355.6 mm) Optional 550 Sheet Feeder: A4, B5, A5, Letter (8.5 × 11"), Executive (7.25 × 10.5"), Folio (8.5 × 13"), Legal (8.5 × 14"), Custom Paper (Width: 148 – 215.9 mm, Length: 210 – 355.6 mm) Bypass Tray: A4, B5, A5, Letter (8.5 × 11"), Executive (7.25 × 10.5"), Folio (8.5 × 13"), Legal (8.5 × 14"), Com-10, Monarch, DL, C5, Custom Paper (Width: 76.2 – 215.9 mm, Length: 127 – 355.6 mm) Image loss: 4.0 mm from the top, bottom, left, and right edges

Items	Description
Paper Type	<p>Standard 550 Sheet Tray, Optional 550 Sheet Feeder:            Plain (60 – 90 gsm), Lightweight Cardstock (106 – 163 gsm), Heavyweight Cardstock (164 – 216 gsm), Hole Punched (60 – 90 gsm), Lightweight Glossy Cardstock (106 – 163 gsm), Heavyweight Glossy Cardstock (164 – 216 gsm), Letterhead (60 – 90 gsm), Colored (60 – 90 gsm), Other Type</p> <p>Bypass Tray:            Plain (60 – 90 gsm), Lightweight Cardstock (106 – 163 gsm), Heavyweight Cardstock (164 – 216 gsm), Hole Punched (60 – 90 gsm), Labels, Lightweight Glossy Cardstock (106 – 163 gsm), Heavyweight Glossy Cardstock (164 – 216 gsm), Envelope, Letterhead (60 – 90 gsm), Colored (60 – 90 gsm), Other Type</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To perform the duplex printing, use the plain paper (64 - 163 gsm).</li> <li>• Use only the recommended paper. Using paper other than that recommended for the printer can cause printing problems. Do not use special ink jet paper. For information about the kind of the recommended paper, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.</li> <li>• Note that poor printing quality due to paper-related printing problems can occur when using the printer in an environment that is dry, cold, or very humid.</li> <li>• Printing over the printed side or on the reverse side of paper that already has been printed on can result in poor print quality.</li> <li>• When printing on envelopes, use envelopes that do not have adhesive applied.</li> <li>• The type of paper being used and environmental conditions can affect printing quality. Because of this, it is recommended that you test print and confirm proper print quality before using the printer.</li> </ul>
Paper Tray capacity	<p>Standard:            Standard 550 Sheet Tray: 550 sheets            Bypass tray: 150 sheets</p> <p>Optional:            Optional 550 Sheet Feeder: 550 sheets</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)</li> </ul>
Output tray capacity	<p>Approximately 250 sheets (face down)</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)</li> </ul>
2-sided Printing Feature	Standard
CPU	ARM11 533MHz
Memory capacity	<p>Standard: 256 MB (Onboard)            Optional: 512 MB</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Depending on the function, the optional 512MB memory is required.</li> <li>• The above memory capacity does not guarantee print quality depending on the type and content of print data.</li> </ul>
Hard disk	<p>Optional: 160 GB or larger</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Depending on the function, the optional hard disk unit is required.</li> </ul>
Fonts	<p>Built-in fonts            PCL 5 and PCL 6 fonts: 81 fonts and 36 symbol sets            PostScript® 3™: 136 fonts            PDF Font: 14 fonts</p>
Page Description Language	PCL 6, PostScript®, FX-PDF, TIFF, JPEG



Items	Description
Supported OS	<p>Standard: PCL 6 and PostScript<sup>®</sup> drivers  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP x86,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 x86,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> x86,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 x86,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 7 x86,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 8 x86  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP x64,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 x64,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> x64,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 x64,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 7 x64,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 R2 x64,  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 8 x64  Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2012  Mac OS<sup>®</sup> X 10.3.9  Mac OS<sup>®</sup> X 10.4  Mac OS<sup>®</sup> X 10.5  Mac OS<sup>®</sup> X 10.6  Mac OS<sup>®</sup> X 10.7  Mac OS<sup>®</sup> X 10.8  Red Hat<sup>®</sup> Enterprise Linux<sup>®</sup> 5 Desktop x86  Red Hat<sup>®</sup> Enterprise Linux<sup>®</sup> 6 Desktop x86  SUSE<sup>®</sup> Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 x86  SUSE<sup>®</sup> Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 x86</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For information about the latest supported OS, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.</li> </ul>
Interface	<p>Standard: Ethernet (1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0  Optional: IEEE802.11 b/g/n</p>
Supported protocol	<p>TCP/IP (LPD, Port9100, WSD, HTTP, HTTPS, SMTP, RARP, AutoIP, WINS, FTP, Telnet, DNS, DDNS, IPP, IPPS, SNTP, SMB), SNMP, DHCP, BOOTP, Bonjour<sup>®</sup> (mDNS)</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To use IPPS protocol, you need to install the optional hard disk unit.</li> <li>• WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.</li> <li>• WSD is available only on Windows Vista<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup> 7, Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008, or Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 R2.</li> </ul>
Power	<p>AC 110 - 127 V ± 10%; 12 A or less; both 50/60 Hz ± 3%  AC 220 - 240 V ± 10%; 6 A or less; both 50/60 Hz ± 3%</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum machine measured current</li> </ul>
Operating noise (main unit only)	<p>During operation:  Color: 7.15 B; 53.8 dB (A)  Monochrome: 6.95 B; 53.5 dB (A)  During stand-by: 4.69 B</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Measurements based on ISO7779  Unit B: acoustic power level (LwAd)  Unit dB (A): radiated sound pressure (bystander position)</li> </ul>

Items	Description
Power consumption	Maximum: 1350 W, During the Sleep mode: 5.0 W or less Average: During standby: 76 W or less During continuous printing: 705 W or less  <b>IMPORTANT:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low Power Mode: 14 W average                (The printer does not use electricity when the power is switched off even with the power cord is plugged in.)</li> </ul>
Dimensions (main unit only)	427 (W) × 488 (D) × 384 (H) mm
Weight	25.2 kg (main unit only, including consumables)
Usage Environment	During Use: Temperature: 10 - 32 °C; Humidity: 10 - 85% (except malfunctions due to dew condensation) Non-Use: Temperature: -20 - 40 °C; Humidity: 5 - 85% (except malfunctions due to dew condensation)  <b>IMPORTANT:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Until the conditions (temperature and humidity) inside the printer become acclimated to the installation environment, certain qualities of the paper can cause poor printing.</li> </ul>

# Basic Operation

This chapter includes:

- ["Main Components" on page 32](#)
- ["Installing Optional Accessories" on page 35](#)
- ["Turning on the Printer" on page 55](#)
- ["Printing a Panel Settings Page" on page 56](#)
- ["Power Saver Mode" on page 57](#)

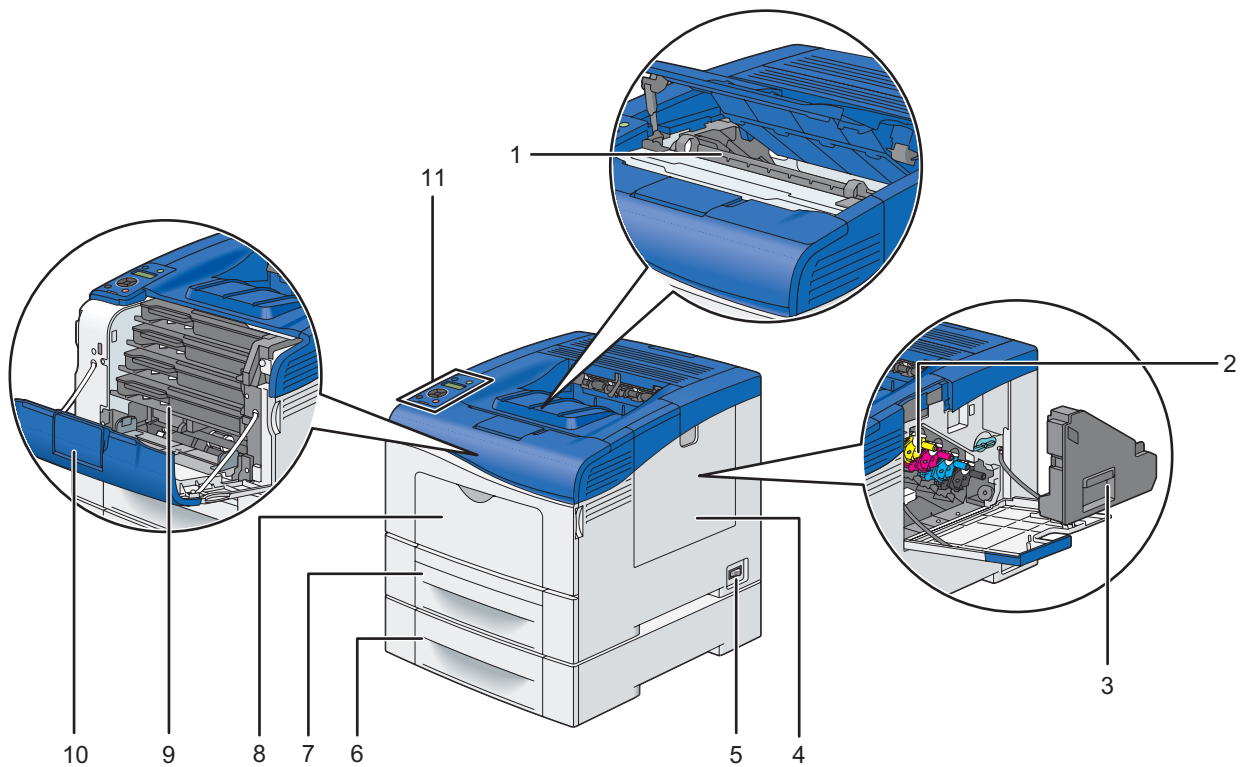
# Main Components

This section provides an overview of your printer.

This section includes:

- "Front View" on page 32
- "Rear View" on page 33
- "Operator Panel" on page 34

## ■ Front View

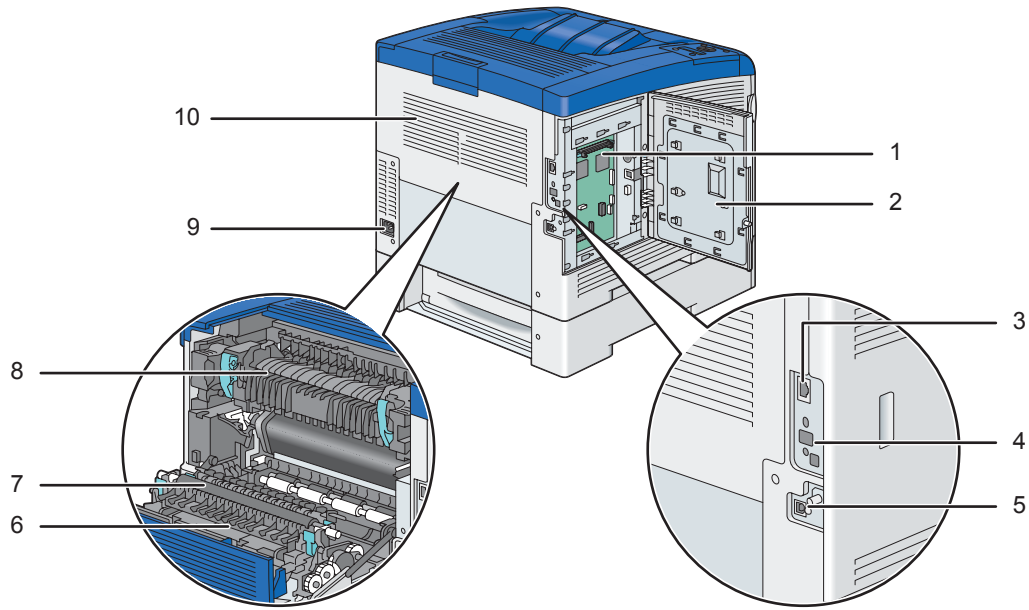


1	Belt Unit	7	Standard 550 Sheet Tray (Tray1)
2	Drum Cartridge	8	Bypass Tray
3	Waste Toner Box	9	Toner Cartridge
4	Side Cover	10	Front Cover
5	Power Switch	11	Operator Panel
6	Optional 550 Sheet Feeder (Tray2)		

### IMPORTANT:

- To avoid irregular screen image or malfunctioning of your printer, avoid placing the printer in direct sunlight with the bypass tray opened.

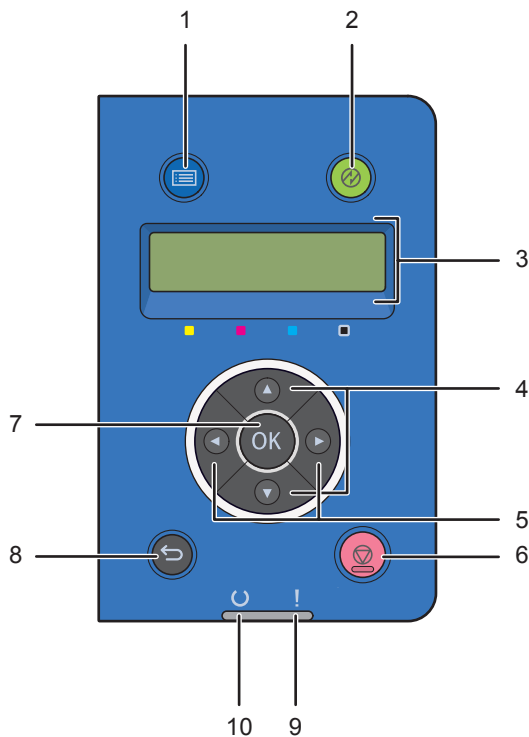
## ■ Rear View










1	Control Board	6	Duplexer
2	Control Board Cover	7	2nd BTR
3	Ethernet Port	8	Fusing Unit
4	Wireless Adapter Socket (The optional wireless adapter is not supplied in some regions.)	9	Power Connector
5	USB Port	10	Rear Cover

## ■ Operator Panel

The operator panel has a 2-line by 16-character liquid crystal display (LCD) panel, light-emitting diodes (LED), and control buttons, which allow you to control the printer.



- 1**  (**Menu**) button
  - Moves to the top menu.
- 2**  (**Wake Up**) button
  - Lights up in the Power Saver mode. Press this button to exit the Power Saver mode.
- 3** LCD Panel
  - Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
- 4** ▲ ▼ buttons
  - Scrolls through menus or items in the Menu mode. To enter numbers or password, press these buttons.
- 5** ◀ ▶ buttons
  - Selects submenus or setting values in the Menu mode.
- 6**  (**Stop**) button
  - Cancels the current print job.
- 7**  button
  - Displays the selected menu or item and determines the selected value in the Menu mode.
- 8**  (**Exit**) button
  - Switches to the Print mode from the top menu of the Menu mode.
  - Returns to the upper hierarchy of the menu from the submenu of the Menu mode.
- 9**  (**Error**) LED
  - Lights up when the printer has an error.
- 10**  (**Ready**) LED
  - Lights up when the printer is ready.

# Installing Optional Accessories

You can make the printer more functional by installing the optional accessories such as the 512MB Memory, the 550 sheet feeder, Wireless Network Kit b/g/n, and the hard disk unit. This section describes how to install these printer's options.

This section includes:

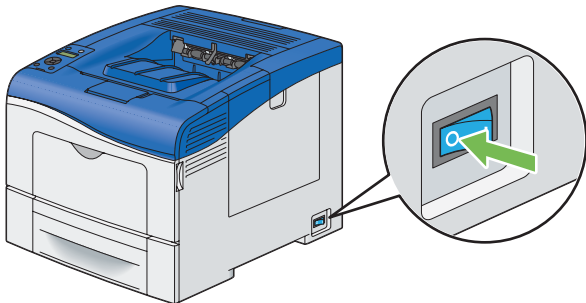
- "Installing the Optional 512MB Memory" on page 35
- "Installing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 40
- "Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 45
- "Installing the Optional Hard Disk Unit" on page 50

## ■ Installing the Optional 512MB Memory

### NOTE:

- Your printer supports additional 512 MB memory module.

- 1 Turn off the printer.



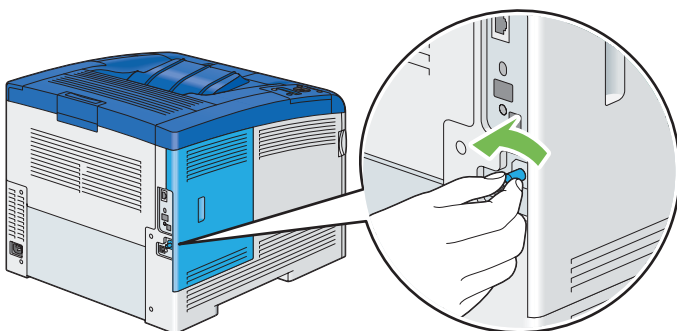
### IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

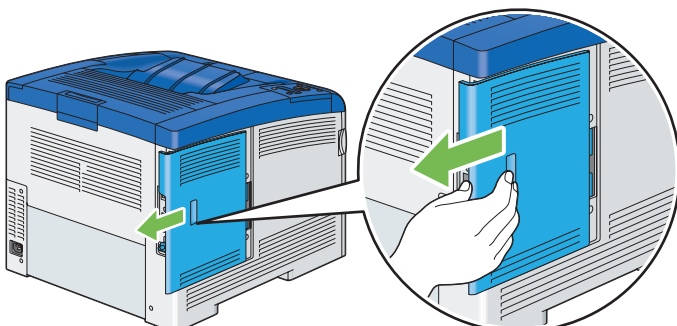
- 2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.

### NOTE:

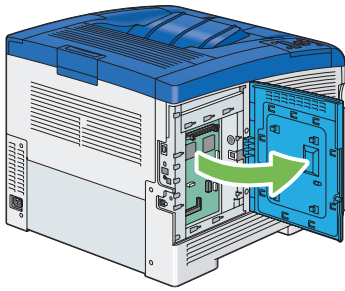
- Loosen the screw. You do not need to remove the screw.



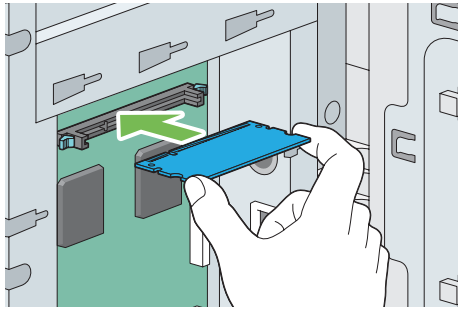
- 3 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.



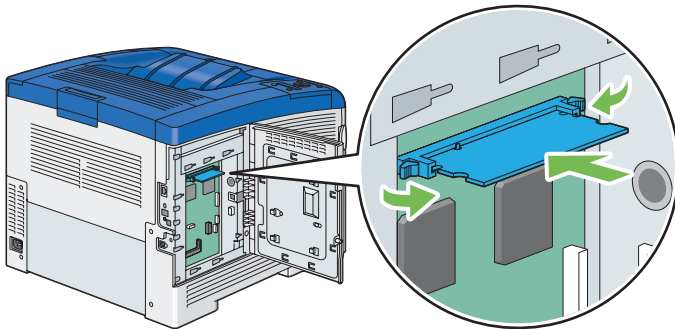
- 4 Open the control board cover completely.



- 5 Hold the edge of the memory module with the labeled side down and the connector toward the control board, and then insert it into the slot.



- 6 Push the memory module firmly into the slot.

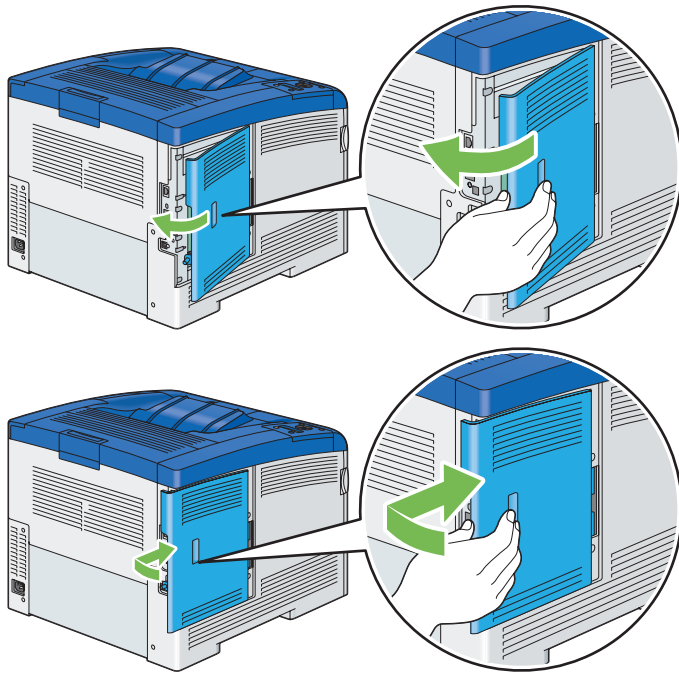


**NOTE:**

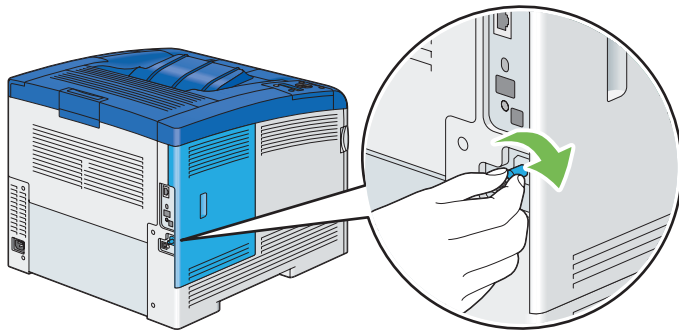
- Ensure that the memory module is firmly fixed in the slot and does not move easily.



- 7 Close the control board cover, and slide it towards the front of the printer.






- 8 Turn the screw clockwise.



- 9 Turn on the printer.

- 10 Print the Printer Settings page to confirm that the newly installed memory module is detected by the printer.

- a Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- b Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- c Select `Printer Settings`, and then press the  button.

The Printer Settings page is printed.

- 11 Confirm the amount of **Memory Capacity** listed under **General** in the Printer Settings page.

If the memory capacity has not increased, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and re-install the memory module.

- 12 If you installed the optional 512MB memory after installing the print driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

# Updating Your Driver to Detect Optional 512MB Memory

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® and the PCL 6/PS driver.

## NOTE:

- When you use XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver, the following settings are not required.

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server® 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows 7/ Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Vista®/ Windows Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Windows Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows XP/ Windows XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> (<b>start</b> for Windows XP) → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li></ol>

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

- 1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.
- 2 Select **RAM Disk** in the **Items** list box.
- 3 Select **Installed** in the **RAM Disk** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.
- 4 Select **Memory Capacity** in the **Items** list box.
- 5 Select the total amount of the installed printer memory in the **Memory Capacity** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.
- 6 Click **OK**.

**7** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

**8** Close the **Devices and Printers** (, **Printers**, or **Printers and Faxes**) dialog box.

The following procedure uses Mac OS® X and the PS driver.

---

Mac OS X 10.7.x/10.8.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Scan</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Fax</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the printer from the <b>Printer List</b> screen in <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>).</li><li>2 Click <b>Printers</b> on the <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>) menu bar, and select <b>Show Info</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Installable Options</b>, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click <b>Apply Changes</b>.</li></ol>

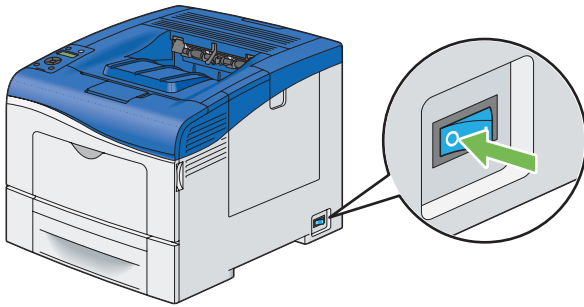
---

# ■ Installing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

## IMPORTANT:

- If you install the optional 550 sheet feeder after setting up the printer, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before installing the feeder.

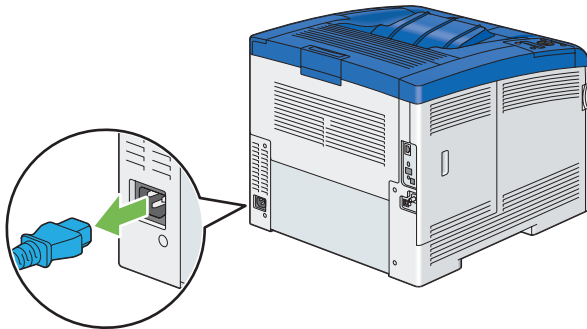
- 1 Turn off the printer.



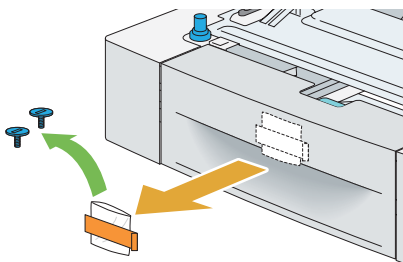
## IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

- 2 Disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer.

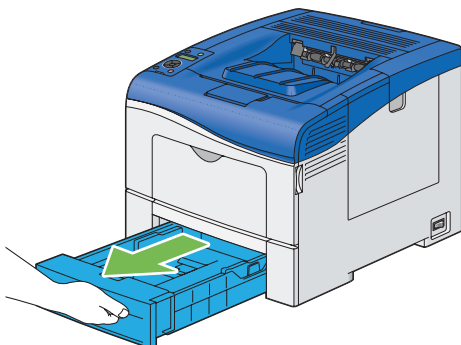


- 3 Remove the tape and the bag holding the screws on the front of the optional 550 sheet feeder, and then remove the screws from the bag.

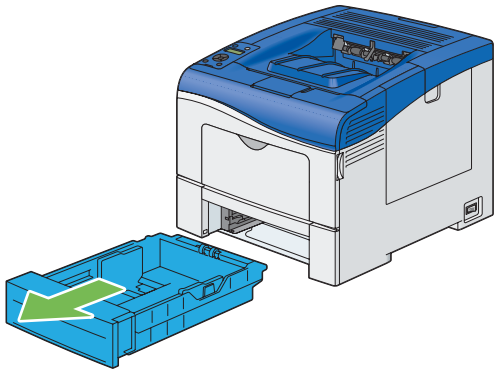


- 4 Place the optional 550 sheet feeder in the location that the printer is located.

- 5 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm.



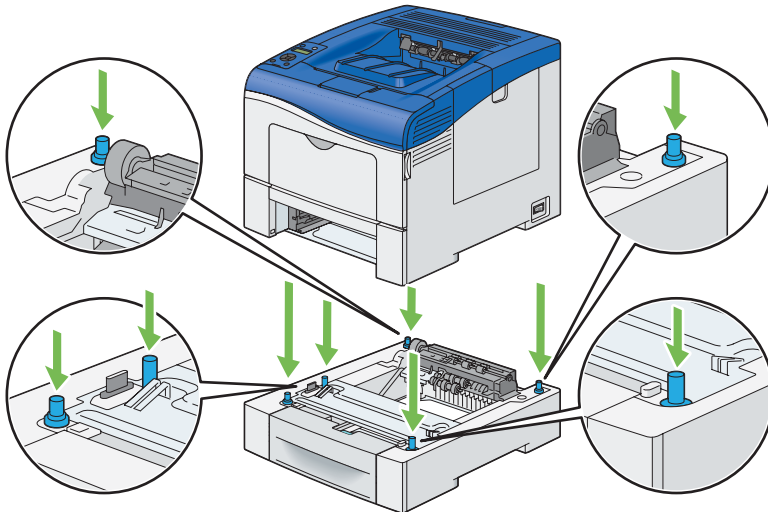
- 6 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



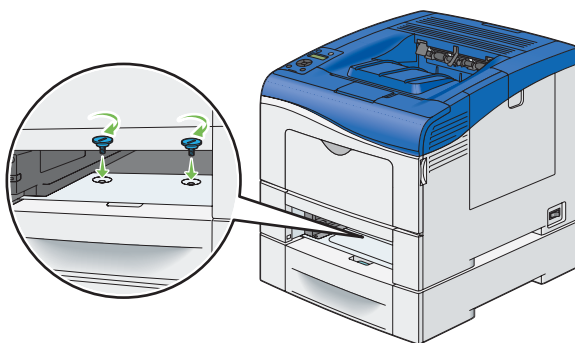
- 7 Lift the printer and align the five guide pins of the optional 550 sheet feeder with the holes at the bottom of the printer. Gently lower the printer onto the optional 550 sheet feeder.

**IMPORTANT:**

- When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in "Machine Installation" on page 16.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the printer onto the optional 550 sheet feeder.



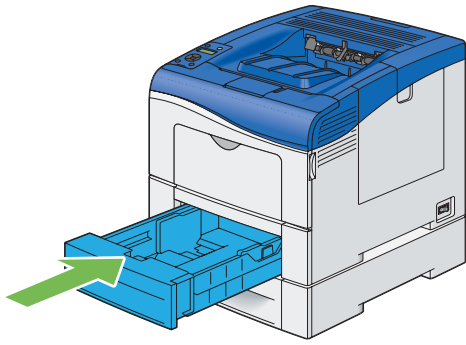
- 8 Secure the optional 550 sheet feeder to the printer by tightening the two screws provided with the feeder, with a coin or similar object.



**NOTE:**

- The screw hole is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

- 9 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



**IMPORTANT:**




- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or inside of the printer.

- 10 Reconnect all cables into the rear of the printer and turn on the printer.

**NOTE:**






- The printer will automatically detect the attached tray but will not detect the paper type.

- 11 Print the Printer Settings page to confirm the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed correctly.

- Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- Select `Printer Settings`, and then press the  button.  
The Printer Settings page is printed.

- 12 Confirm **Tray 2 (550 Sheet Feeder)** is listed under **Printer Options** in the Printer Settings page.  
If the feeder is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and re-install the optional 550 sheet feeder.

- 13 After loading paper in the optional 550 sheet feeder, specify the paper type from the printer operator panel.

- Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- Select `Tray Settings`, and then press the  button.
- Select `Tray 2`, and then press the  button.
- Select `Paper Type`, and then press the  button.
- Select the paper type for the optional 550 sheet feeder, and then press the  button.

- 14 If you installed the optional 550 sheet feeder after installing the print driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

# Updating Your Driver to Detect Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

The following procedure uses Windows and the PCL 6/PS driver.

## NOTE:

- When you use XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver, the following settings are not required.

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows 7/ Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Vista/ Windows Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Windows Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows XP/ Windows XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> (<b>start</b> for Windows XP) → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li></ol>

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

- 1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.
- 2 Select **Paper Tray Configuration** in the **Items** list box.
- 3 Select **2 Trays** in the **Paper Tray Configuration** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Close the **Devices and Printers** (, **Printers**, or **Printers and Faxes**) dialog box.

The following procedure uses Mac OS X and the PS driver.

---

Mac OS X 10.7.x/10.8.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Scan</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Fax</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the printer from the <b>Printer List</b> screen in <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>).</li><li>2 Click <b>Printers</b> on the <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>) menu bar, and select <b>Show Info</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Installable Options</b>, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click <b>Apply Changes</b>.</li></ol>

---



# ■ Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

The wireless printer adapter allows you to use the printer with wireless network connection.

The specifications of the wireless printer adapter are described below.

**NOTE:**

- The optional wireless printer adapter is not supplied in some regions.

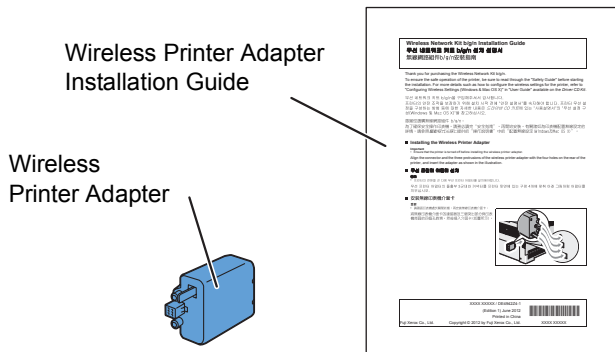
Item	Specification
Connectivity Technology	Wireless
Compliant Standards	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES), WPA2-Enterprise (AES)
Wi-Fi Protected Setup® (WPS)*:	Push-Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

\*:WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

**NOTE:**

- WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES) and WPA2-Enterprise (AES) are available when the optional hard disk unit is installed.
- When the wireless printer adapter is installed, you cannot use IEEE 802.1x authentication and/or the Ethernet port for a wired connection.

## Verifying the Contents of the Box



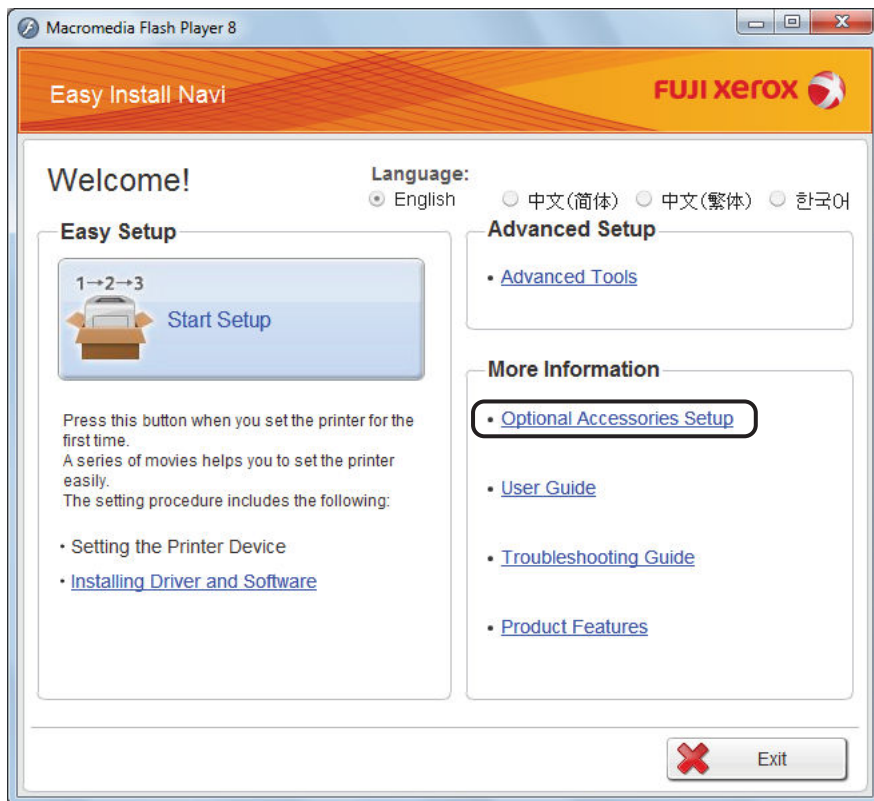
**NOTE:**

- To complete wireless installation, you require the corresponding *Driver CD Kit* that comes with your printer, which can also be downloaded from <http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/>.

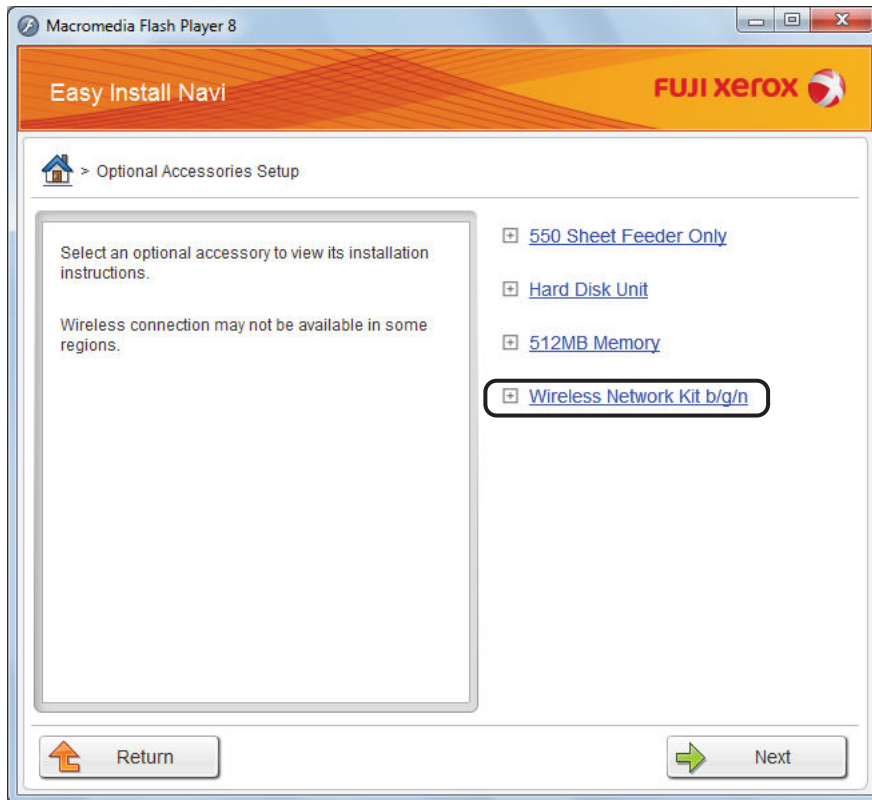
# Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter Using Video Instructions (Recommended)

To install the wireless printer adapter using the video instructions on the Windows computer perform the following method.

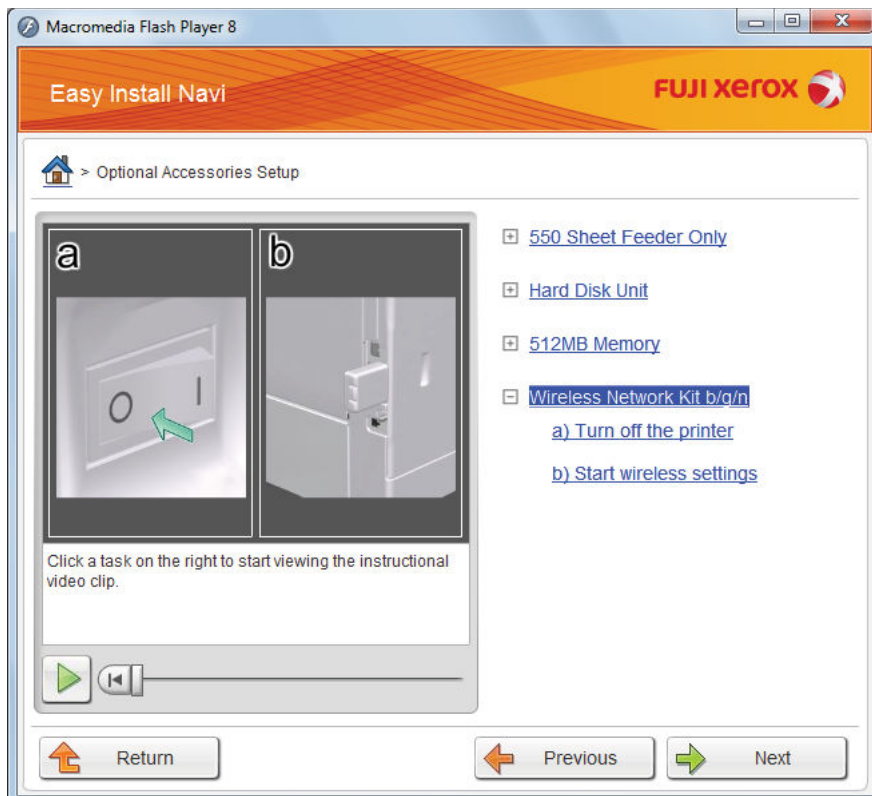
- 1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* in your computer. The **Easy Install Navi** file launches automatically.
- 2 Select **Optional Accessories Setup** on the **Easy Install Navi** window.



3 Click **Wireless Network Kit b/g/n**.



4 Click the procedure you want confirm to start the video instruction.



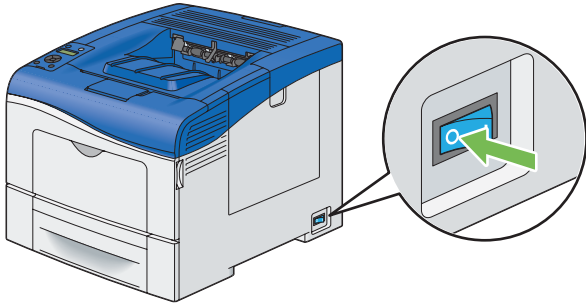
Follow the on-screen instructions to install the wireless printer adapter.

# Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

## NOTE:

- You can also install the wireless printer adapter by following the instructions described in Wireless Printer Adapter Installation Guide provided with the wireless printer adapter.

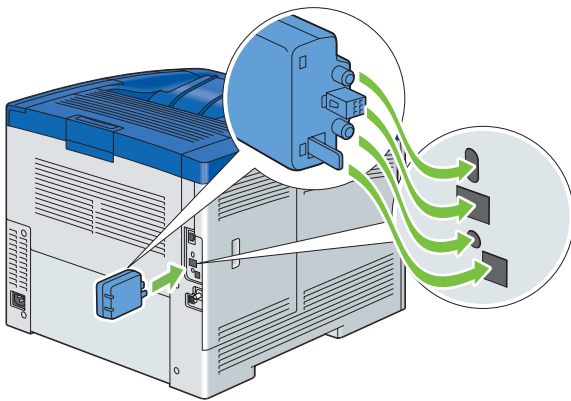
- 1 Turn off the printer.



## IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

- 2 Align the connector and the three protrusions of the wireless printer adapter with the four holes and insert the adapter.



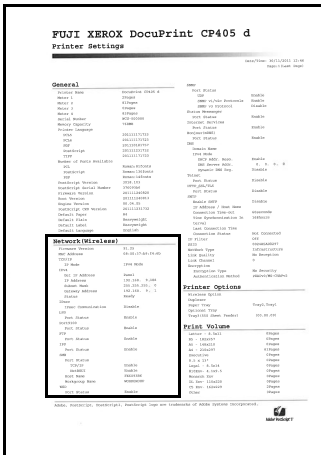
## NOTE:

- Ensure that the adapter is fully inserted and secured.

**3** Turn on the printer.

If a message displays telling you to make initial setup on the operator panel, always do as instructed.

**4** Print the Printer Settings page to confirm that the wireless printer adapter is installed correctly. Confirm that the **Network (Wireless)** section exists.

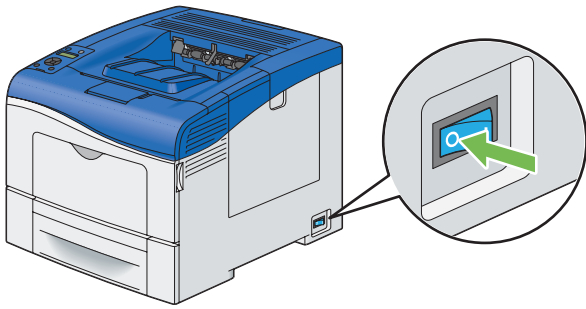


**NOTE:**

- For more information on configuring the wireless printer adapter, see "[Configuring Wireless Settings \(Windows & Mac OS X\)](#)" on page 102.

## ■ Installing the Optional Hard Disk Unit

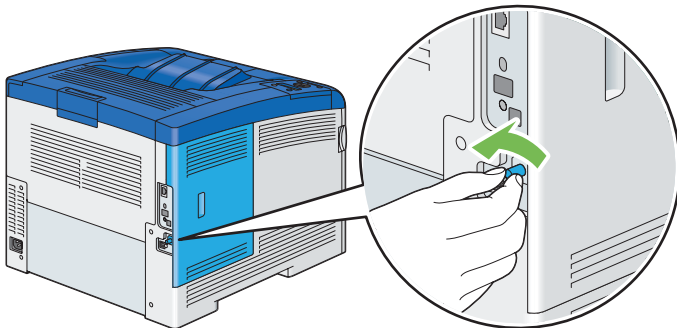
- 1 Turn off the printer.



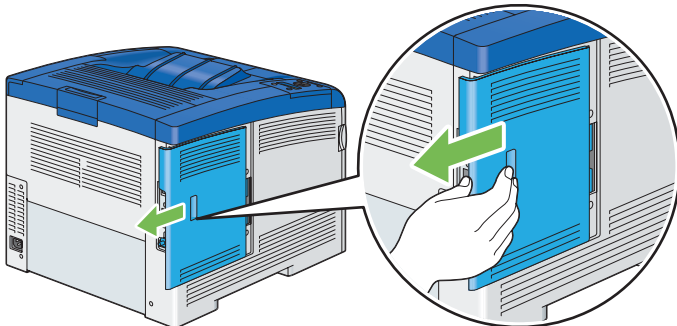
### IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

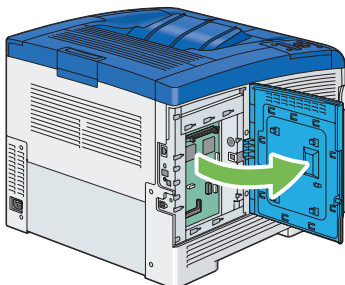
- 2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.



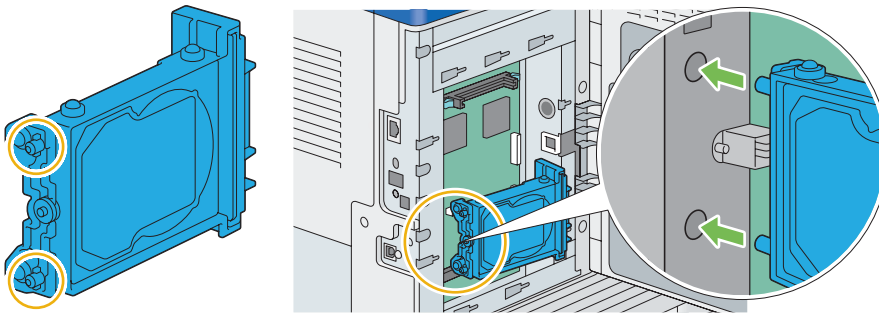
- 3 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.



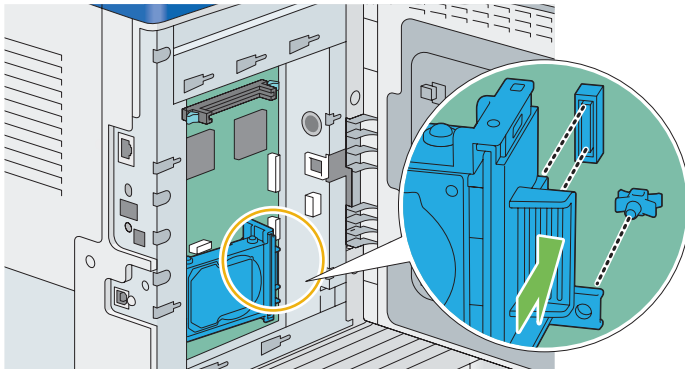
- 4 Open the control board cover completely.



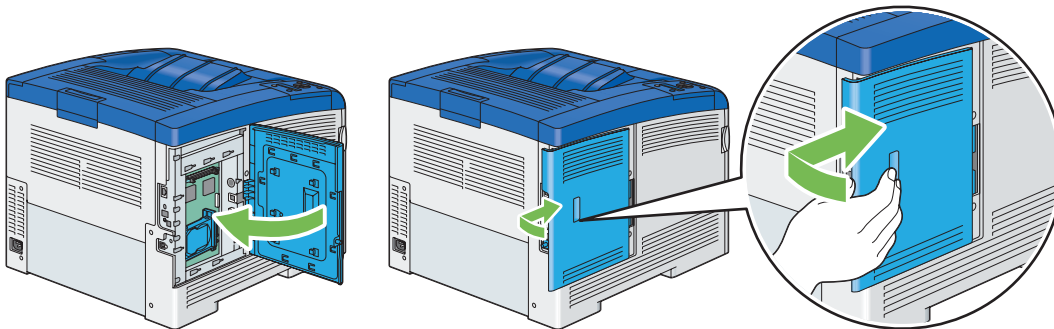
- 5 Insert the two plastic pins on the hard disk unit into the metal casing holes.



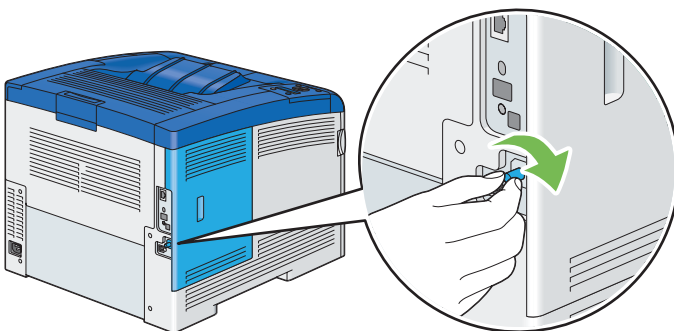
- 6 Attaching the protrusion and the connector to the control board, push the hard disk unit firmly into place.



- 7 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.






- 8 Turn the screw clockwise.



- 9 Turn on the printer.

- 10 Print the Printer Settings page to confirm the optional hard disk unit is installed correctly.

- a Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- b Select Report / List, and then press the  button.
- c Select Printer Settings, and then press the  button.

The Printer Settings page is printed.

- 11** Confirm the amount of **Hard Disk** listed under **Printer Options** in the Printer Settings page.  
If the **Hard Disk** is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and re-install the hard disk unit.
- 12** If you installed the hard disk unit after installing the print driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.  
hard disk unit can be specified on the print driver only when Hard Disk or RAM Disk is available on the print driver.



# Updating Your Driver to Detect Optional Hard Disk Unit

The following procedure uses Windows and the PCL 6/PS driver.

## NOTE:

- When you use XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver, the following settings are not required.

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows 7/ Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Vista/ Windows Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Windows Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows XP/ Windows XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> (<b>start</b> for Windows XP) → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CP405 d and select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi- Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then select <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li></ol>

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

- 1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.
- 2 Select **Hard Disk** in the **Items** list box.
- 3 Select **Installed** in the **Hard Disk** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Close the **Devices and Printers** (, **Printers**, or **Printers and Faxes**) dialog box.

The following procedure uses Mac OS X and the PS driver.

---

Mac OS X 10.7.x/10.8.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Scan</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list box, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Fax</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list box, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the printer from the <b>Printer List</b> screen in <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>).</li><li>2 Click <b>Printers</b> on the <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>) menu bar, and select <b>Show Info</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Installable Options</b>, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click <b>Apply Changes</b>.</li></ol>

---

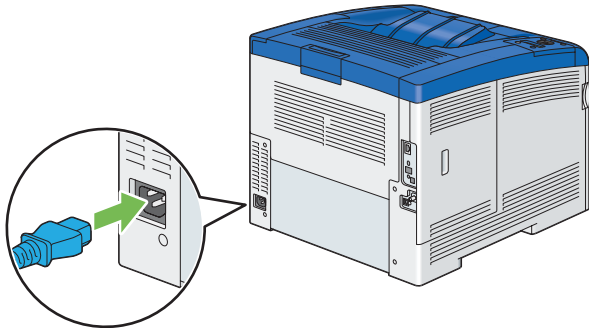
# Turning on the Printer

---

## IMPORTANT:

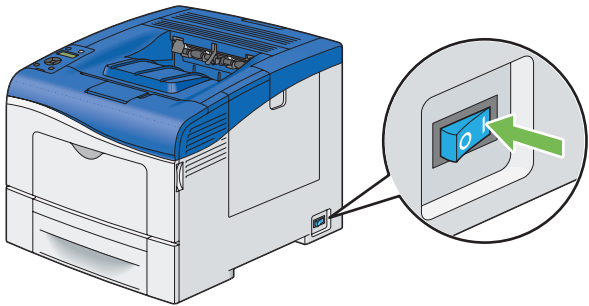
- Do not use extension cords or power strips.
- The printer should not be connected to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) system.

- 1 Connect the power cord to the power connector on the rear of your printer.



- 2 Connect the other end of the power cord to the power source.




- 3 Turn on the printer.



# Printing a Panel Settings Page

---

The Panel Settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Panel Settings`, and then press the  button.

The Panel Settings page is printed.

# Power Saver Mode

---

The printer has an energy saving feature that reduces power consumption during periods of inactivity. This feature operates in two modes: the Low Power mode and Sleep mode. As delivered, the printer switches to the Low Power mode one minute after the last print job is printed. The printer then switches to the Sleep mode after another four minutes of inactivity. When the printer is in the Low Power mode, the LCD backlight turns off. In the Sleep mode, the ⏻ (**Wake Up**) button lights up, and the LCD backlight turns off. In the Sleep mode, the display also goes blank and displays nothing.

The factory default settings are changeable within the range of 1 to 60 minutes (Low Power Timer) and 1 to 6 minutes (Sleep Timer). The printer returns to the ready-to-print state in about 20 seconds when re-activated.

## NOTE:

- The functions of Low Power Timer and Sleep Timer cannot be disabled.

## See also:

- ["Setting the Power Saver Time Option" on page 197](#)

## ■ Exiting the Power Saver Mode

The printer automatically exits the Power Saver mode when it receives a print job from a computer. To manually exit the Low Power mode, press the ⏻ (**Wake Up**) button on the operator panel. To exit the Sleep mode, press the ⏻ (**Wake Up**) button.

## NOTE:

- Opening and closing a cover will cause the printer to exit the Low Power mode and the Sleep mode.
- When the printer is in the Sleep mode, all buttons on the operator panel except for the ⏻ (**Wake Up**) button do not function. To use the buttons on the operator panel, press the ⏻ (**Wake Up**) button to exit the Sleep mode.

## See also:

- ["Setting the Power Saver Time Option" on page 197](#)



# Printer Management Software

Use the CD-ROMs shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

This chapter includes:

- ["Print Drivers" on page 60](#)
- ["CentreWare Internet Services" on page 61](#)
- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 62](#)
- ["Setup Disk Creation Tool \(Windows Only\)" on page 63](#)

# Print Drivers

---

To access all of your printer's features, install the print drivers from the *Driver CD Kit* or *PostScript Driver Library CD*.

- The print drivers enable your computer and printer to communicate and provide access to your printer features.



# CentreWare Internet Services

---

This section provides information on CentreWare Internet Services, a hyper text transfer protocol (HTTP)-based web page service that is built into the printer.

These pages give you instant access to printer status, and printer configuration options. Anyone on your network can access the printer using their web browser software. In administrative mode you can change the configuration of the printer, and manage your printer settings without leaving your computer.

## NOTE:

- Users who are not given passwords by the administrator can still view the configuration settings and options in user mode. They will not be able to save or apply any changes to the current configuration.

## ■ Creating an Administrative Password

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address in the browser's address field, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **Administrator Settings**.
- 5 Select **Enabled** for **Administrator Mode**.
- 6 In the **Administrator Login ID** field, enter a name for the administrator.

## NOTE:


- The default ID and password are "11111" and "x-admin", respectively.

- 7 In the **Administrator Password** and **Re-enter Password** fields, enter a password for the administrator.
- 8 In the **Maximum Login Attempts** field, enter the number of login attempts allowed.
- 9 Click **Apply**.

Your new password has been set and anyone with the administrator name and password can log in and change the printer configuration and settings.

# SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

---

You can check the printer status with SimpleMonitor. Double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon  on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Select Printer** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection ports, and printer status. Check the **Status** column to know the current status of your printer. You can also check the amount of toner remaining.

**Status Settings** button: Displays the **Status Settings** dialog box and allows you to modify the SimpleMonitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Select Printer** window. The **Status Monitor** window appears.

The **Status Monitor** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Status Monitor** window launches when printing and an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Status Monitor** window. You can specify the conditions for starting the **Status Monitor** window in **Auto start setup**.

To change the pop-up settings for the **Status Monitor** window:

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **SimpleMonitor for Asia-Pacific** → **Activate SimpleMonitor**.  
The **Select Printer** window appears.
- 2 Click **Status Settings**.  
The **Status Settings** dialog box appears.
- 3 Select the **Pop-up Settings** tab, and then select the type of the pop-up from **Auto start setup**.

SimpleMonitor can be installed from the *Driver CD Kit*. It is available only for Windows.

# Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only)

---

The Setup Disk Creation Tool on the *Driver CD Kit* and the print drivers on the *Driver CD Kit* and *PostScript Driver Library CD* are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved print driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks
- Font references

If you want to install the print driver with the same settings on multiple computers running the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the print driver.

- Install the print driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.



# Printer Connection and Software Installation

This chapter includes:

- ["Overview of Network Setup and Configuration" on page 66](#)
- ["Connecting Your Printer" on page 67](#)
- ["Setting the IP Address" on page 69](#)
- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows" on page 73](#)
- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X" on page 95](#)
- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Linux \(CUPS\)" on page 96](#)
- ["Configuring Wireless Settings \(Windows & Mac OS X\)" on page 102](#)

# Overview of Network Setup and Configuration

---

To set up and configure the network:

- 1 Connect the printer to the network using the recommended hardware and cables.
  - 2 Turn on the printer and the computer.
  - 3 Print the Printer Settings page and keep it for referencing network settings.
  - 4 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Driver CD Kit* or *PostScript Driver Library CD*. For information on driver installation, see the section in this chapter for the specific operating system you are using.
  - 5 Configure the printer's TCP/IP address, which is required to identify the printer on the network.
    - Microsoft® Windows® operating systems: Run the IP address setting tool on the *Driver CD Kit* to set the printer's IP address if the printer is connected to an established TCP/IP network. You can also manually set the printer's IP address on the operator panel.
    - Mac OS® X and Linux® systems: Manually set the printer's TCP/IP address on the operator panel.
- See also:**
- "Setting the IP Address" on page 69
- 6 Print a Printer Settings page to verify the new settings.

**NOTE:**

- If the *Driver CD Kit* or *PostScript Driver Library CD* is not available, you can download the latest driver from the Fuji Xerox Web Site: <http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

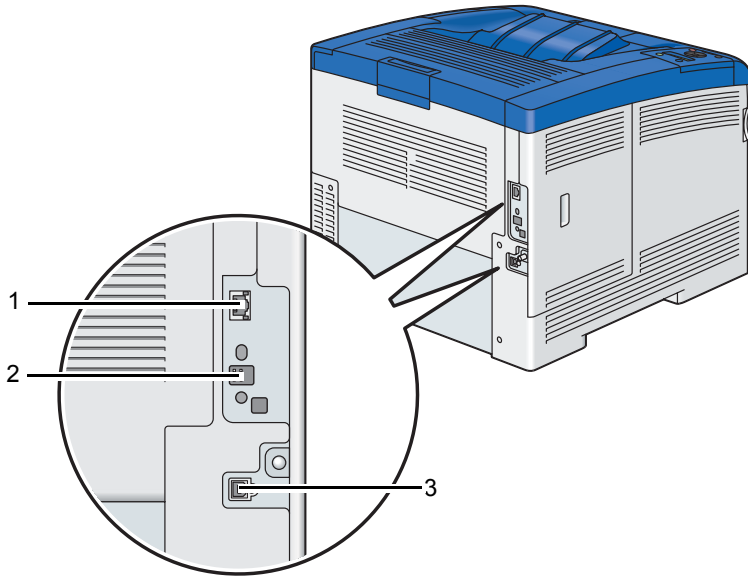
**See also:**




- "Printing a Printer Settings Page" on page 146

# Connecting Your Printer

Your printer interconnection cables must meet the following requirements:

Connection Type	Connection Specifications
USB	USB 2.0
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX/1000 Base-T
Wireless (optional)	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n



1 Ethernet port	
2 Wireless adapter socket	
3 USB port	

## ■ Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

Connect the printer via USB, Ethernet or wireless (optional). An USB connection is a direct connection and is not used for networking. An Ethernet and wireless connections are used for networking. Hardware and cabling requirements vary for the different connection methods. Ethernet and USB cables are not included with your printer and must be purchased separately.

The available features for each connection type are shown in the following table.

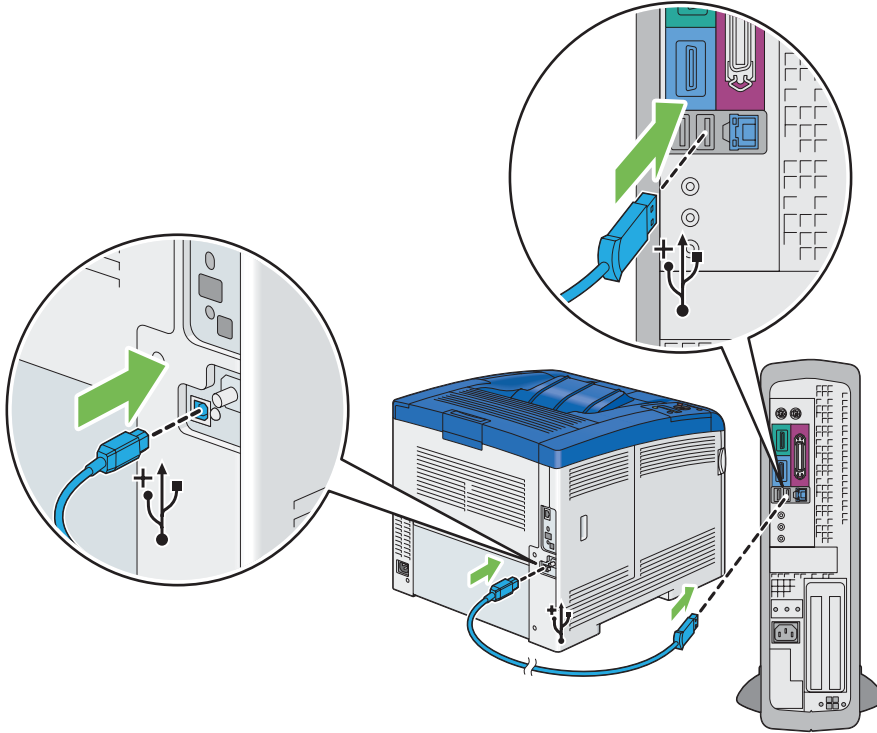
Connection Type	Available Features
USB	When connected via USB you can: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Send print jobs from a computer.</li> <li>• Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status.</li> </ul>
Ethernet	When connected via Ethernet you can: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Send print jobs from a computer on the network.</li> <li>• Use CentreWare Internet Services.</li> <li>• Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status.</li> </ul>
Wireless (optional)	When connected via wireless you can: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Send print jobs from a computer on the network.</li> <li>• Use CentreWare Internet Services.</li> <li>• Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status.</li> </ul>

## USB Connection

A local printer is directly connected to your computer using the USB cable. If your printer is connected to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to ["Wired Network Connection" on page 68](#).

To connect the printer to a computer:

- 1 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port on the rear of the printer, and the other end of the cable into a USB port of the computer.



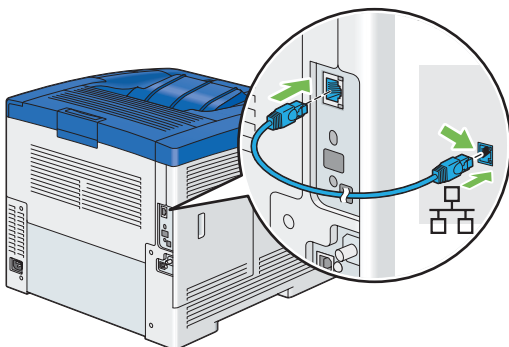
**NOTE:**

- Ensure that you match the USB symbol on the cable to the USB symbol on the printer.
- Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB port available on the keyboard.

## Wired Network Connection

To connect the printer to a network:

- 1 Connect one end of the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub.



## Wireless Network Connection

To set up a wireless connection, insert the optional wireless printer adapter into the wireless adapter socket on the rear of the printer. For details about wireless connection, see ["Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 45](#).

**NOTE:**

- To use the wireless printer adapter, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.



# Setting the IP Address

---

This section includes:

- ["TCP/IP and IP Addresses" on page 69](#)
- ["Setting the Printer's IP Address through the Driver CD Kit" on page 69](#)
- ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 70](#)
- ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 71](#)
- ["Verifying the IP Settings" on page 72](#)
- ["Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page" on page 72](#)

## ■ TCP/IP and IP Addresses

If your computer is on a large network, contact your network administrator for the appropriate TCP/IP addresses and additional system settings information.

If you are creating your own small Local Area Network or connecting the printer directly to your computer using Ethernet, follow the procedure for automatically setting the printer's IP address.

Computers and printers primarily use TCP/IP protocols to communicate over an Ethernet network. With TCP/IP protocols, each printer and computer must have a unique IP address. It is important that the addresses are similar, but not the same; only the last digit needs to be different. For example, your printer can have the address 192.168.1.2 while your computer has the address 192.168.1.3. Another device can have the address 192.168.1.4.

Many networks have a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. A DHCP server automatically programs an IP address into every computer and printer on the network that is configured to use DHCP. A DHCP server is built into most cable and Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) routers. If you use a cable or DSL router, see your router's documentation for information on IP addressing.

## ■ Setting the Printer's IP Address through the Driver CD Kit

If the printer is connected to a small established TCP/IP network without a DHCP server, use the IP address setting tool on the *Driver CD Kit* to detect or assign an IP address to your printer. For further instructions, insert the *Driver CD Kit* into your computer's CD-ROM drive. After the IP address setting tool launches, click **Install Driver and Software**. Start IP address setting tool on the **Admin Tools** tab, and follow the displayed instructions.

### NOTE:

- For the IP address setting tool to function, the printer must be connected to an established TCP/IP network.




## ■ Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address

There are two protocols available for dynamically setting the printer's IP address:

- DHCP (enabled by default)
- AutoIP








You can turn on/off both protocols using the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

### NOTE:

- You can print a report that includes the printer's IP address. On the operator panel, press the  (**Menu**) button, select `Report / List`, press the  button, select `Printer Settings`, and then press the  button. The IP address is listed on the `Printer Settings` page.

## Using the Operator Panel

To turn on/off either the DHCP or AutoIP protocol:

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `TCP/IP`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `IPv4`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Get IP Address`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select `DHCP / Autonet`, and then press the  button.

## Using CentreWare Internet Services

To turn on/off either the DHCP or AutoIP protocol:



























- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address in the browser's address field, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Select **Properties**.
- 4 Select the **Protocol Settings** folder on the left navigation panel.
- 5 Select **TCP/IP**.
- 6 In the **Get IP Address** field, select the **DHCP / Autonet** option.
- 7 Click the **Apply** button.



## ■ Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)

### NOTE:

- When you assign an IP address manually in **IPv6** mode, use the CentreWare Internet Services. To display the CentreWare Internet Services, use the link local address. To check a link local address, see ["Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page" on page 72](#).
- Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.
- Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from 0.0.0.0 to 127.255.255.255 will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel.

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that `Ready` message appears on the LCD panel.
- 3 On the operator panel, press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 4 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Network Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `TCP/IP`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select `IPv4`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select `Get IP Address`, and then press the  button.
- 9 Select `Panel`, and then press the  button.
- 10 Ensure that the message `Restart Printer to apply setting` appears, and then press the  (**Back**) button twice.
- 11 Press the  button to select `IP Address`, and then press the  button.  
The cursor is located at the first octet of the IP address.
- 12 Specify the value of the IP address using the  or  button.
- 13 Press the  button.  
The cursor moves to the next octet.
- 14 Repeat steps 12 to 13 to set all of the digits in the IP address, and then press the  button.
- 15 Ensure that the message `Restart Printer to apply setting` appears, and then press the  (**Back**) button twice.
- 16 Press the  button to select `Subnet Mask`, and then press the  button.  
The cursor is located at the first octet of the subnet mask.
- 17 Specify the value of the subnet mask using the  or  button.
- 18 Press the  button.  
The cursor moves to the next octet.
- 19 Repeat steps 17 to 18 to set the subnet mask, and then press the  button.
- 20 Ensure that the message `Restart Printer to apply setting` appears, and then press the  (**Back**) button twice.
- 21 Press the  button to select `Gateway Address`, and then press the  button.  
The cursor is located at the first octet of the gateway address.
- 22 Specify the value of the gateway address using the  or  button.

- 23 Press the ► button.  
The cursor moves to the next octet.
- 24 Repeat steps 22 to 23 to set the gateway address, and then press the  button.
- 25 Ensure that the message `Restart Printer to apply setting` appears, and then press the  (**Back**) button.
- 26 Turn off and turn on the printer.

**IMPORTANT:**

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

**See also:**

- ["Operator Panel" on page 34](#)

## ■ Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by printing the system settings report or using the ping command.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Print the Printer Settings page.
- 2 Look under the **IPv4** heading on the Printer Settings page to ensure that the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are appropriate.

To verify if the printer is active on the network, run the ping command in your computer:




- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**.
- 2 Enter `cmd`, and then click **OK**.  
A black window is displayed.
- 3 Enter `ping xx.xx.xx.xx` (where `xx.xx.xx.xx` is the IP address of your printer), and then press the **Enter** key.  
Reply from the IP address denotes printer is active on the network.

**See also:**

- ["Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page" on page 72](#)

## ■ Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page

Print the Printer Settings page and check your printer's IP address by using the operator panel.

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Printer Settings`, and then press the  button.  
The Printer Settings page is printed.
- 4 Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Network Setup** on the Printer Settings page. If the IP address is `0.0.0.0`, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the Printer Settings page again.  
If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 71](#).

# Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows

---

This section includes:

- ["Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status \(For Network Connection Setup\)" on page 73](#)
- ["Inserting the CD-ROM" on page 75](#)
- ["USB Connection Setup" on page 75](#)
- ["Network Connection Setup" on page 78](#)
- ["Setting Up for Shared Printing" on page 84](#)




## ■ Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (For Network Connection Setup)

Before installing the print driver on your computer, print the Printer Settings page to check the IP address of your printer.

This section includes:

- ["The Operator Panel" on page 73](#)
- ["Changing the Firewall Settings Before Installing Your Printer" on page 74](#)

## The Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Printer Settings`, and then press the  button.  
The Printer Settings page is printed.
- 4 Find the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Network Setup** on the Printer Settings page.  
If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the Printer Settings page again.  
If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 71](#).

# Changing the Firewall Settings Before Installing Your Printer

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must change the firewall settings before installing the Fuji Xerox printer software:

- Windows 8
- Windows Server® 2012
- Windows 7
- Windows Vista®
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows XP

## NOTE:

- For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1** Insert the *Driver CD Kit* into your computer.
- 2** Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 3** Click **System and Security**.
- 4** Click **Windows Firewall**.
- 5** Click **Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall**.
- 6** Click **Change settings**.
- 7** Click **Allow another program**.
- 8** Click **Browse**.
- 9** Click **D:\setup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the **File name** text box, and then click **Open**.
- 10** Click **Add**.
- 11** Click **OK**.

## ■ Inserting the CD-ROM

### • For Installing PCL 6 Driver

- 1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* into your computer to start Easy Install Navi.

**NOTE:**

- If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Run**, and then enter **D:\setup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive), and then click **OK**.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012

Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Enter **Run** in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Run** → Enter **D:\setup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive), and then click **OK**.

### • For Installing PS Driver

- 1 Insert the *PostScript Driver Library CD* into your computer.

### • For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Eng\XPS (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

## ■ USB Connection Setup

**NOTE:**

A personal printer is a printer attached to your computer or a print server using a USB. If your printer is attached to a network and not your computer, see "[Network Connection Setup](#)" on page 78.

### • For Installing PCL 6 Driver

- 1 On the top screen of Easy Install Navi, click **Installing Driver and Software**.
- 2 Click **Print Driver**.
- 3 Click **Connect via USB**.
- 4 Follow the procedures described in the Help to install the print driver.

### • For Installing PS Driver

For information on how to install the PS driver, refer to the PostScript User Guide.

## • For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

### NOTE:

- XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

### Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
  - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
  - 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
  - 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
  - 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
  - 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
  - 7 Click **Open**.
  - 8 Click **OK**.
  - 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
  - 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box displayed under the **Printer name**.
  - 11 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
  - 13 Click **Finish**.

### Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

### NOTE:

- You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
- 7 Click **Open**.



- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 11 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.  
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 13 Click **Next**.
- 14 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

## Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.  
**NOTE:**
  - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.  
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.
- 13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 14 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

## Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Select your printer.
- 4 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 5 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
- 6 Click **Open**.
- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 9 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. Installation starts.
- 10 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.  
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 11 Click **Next**.
- 12 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 14 Click **Finish**.

## ■ Network Connection Setup

### NOTE:

- To use this printer in a Linux environment, you need to install a Linux driver. For more information on how to install and use these, see also "[Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Linux \(CUPS\)](#)" on page 96.

## Network Printer Setup on a Local Network

### • For installing PCL 6 Driver

- 1 On the top screen of Easy Install Navi, click **Installing Driver and Software**.
- 2 Click **Print Driver**.
- 3 Select **Standard** or **Custom** setup.
- 4 Follow the on-screen instructions to install the print driver.

### • For Installing PS Driver

For information on how to install the PS driver, refer to the PostScript User Guide.

## • For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

### NOTE:

- XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

### Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
  - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
  - 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
  - 4 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.  
When you select your printer, go to step 7.  
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
  - 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
  - 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
  - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
  - 9 Click **Open**.
  - 10 Click **OK**.
  - 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
  - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.  
Installation starts.
  - 13 Click **Next**.
  - 14 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
  - 15 Click **Finish**.

## Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

### NOTE:

- You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
  - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
  - 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
  - 4 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.  
When you select your printer, go to step 7.  
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
  - 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
  - 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
- ### NOTE:
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
  - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
  - 9 Click **Open**.
  - 10 Click **OK**.
  - 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
  - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
  - 13 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
  - 14 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
  - 15 Click **Next**.
  - 16 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
  - 17 Click **Finish**.

## Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

### NOTE:

- When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, **Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on the screen.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

### NOTE:

- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.
- 13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 14 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

## Windows 7 and Windows 7 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
  - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
  - 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
  - 4 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.  
When you select your printer, go to step 7.  
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
  - 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
  - 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
  - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
  - 9 Click **Open**.
  - 10 Click **OK**.
  - 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
  - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
  - 13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
  - 14 Click **Next**.
  - 15 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.
  - 16 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
  - 17 Click **Finish**.

## Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
  - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
  - 3 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.  
When you select your printer, go to step 6.  
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 4.
  - 4 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
  - 5 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
  - 7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "[For Installing XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver](#)" on page 75.
  - 8 Click **Open**.
  - 9 Click **OK**.
  - 10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
  - 11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
  - 12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.  
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
  - 13 Click **Next**.
  - 14 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
  - 15 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
  - 16 Click **Finish**.

Use CentreWare Internet Services to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click our web site link for ordering supplies.

**NOTE:**

- CentreWare Internet Services is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.
- To launch CentreWare Internet Services, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

## ■ Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Driver CD Kit* that comes with your printer, or using Microsoft peer-to-peer method. However, if you use the Microsoft method, some features, such as the SimpleMonitor and other printer utilities, installed with the *Driver CD Kit*, may not be available.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

### • For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** (start for Windows XP) → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** radio button, and then enter a name in **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
If you are missing files, you are prompted to insert the server operating system CD.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

### • For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Click **Change sharing options**.  
The message **Windows needs your permission to continue** appears.
- 4 Click **Continue**.
- 5 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in **Share name**.
- 6 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

### • For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in **Share name**.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.



## • For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

## • For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To confirm that the printer is properly shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers**, **Printers and Faxes** or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The shared icon is shown under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and the shared name you assigned to the printer.

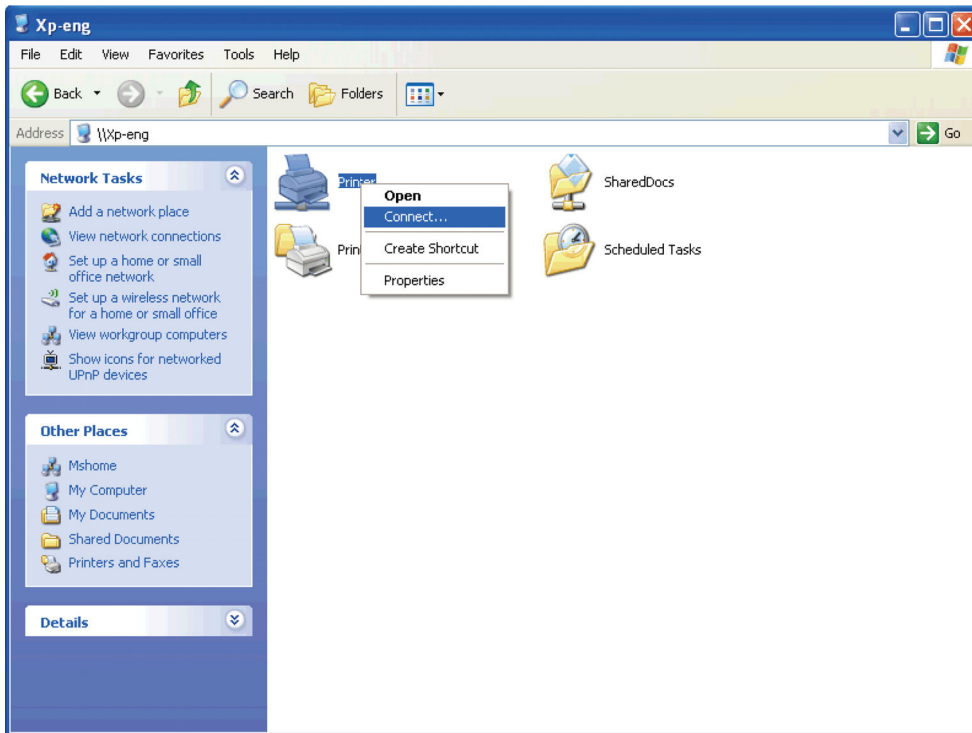
Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the peer-to-peer method.

## ■ Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the print driver.

### • For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The copy time varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

- 4 Close **My Network Places**.
- 5 Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.
  - b Select the printer you just created.
  - c Click **File** → **Properties**.
  - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## • For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

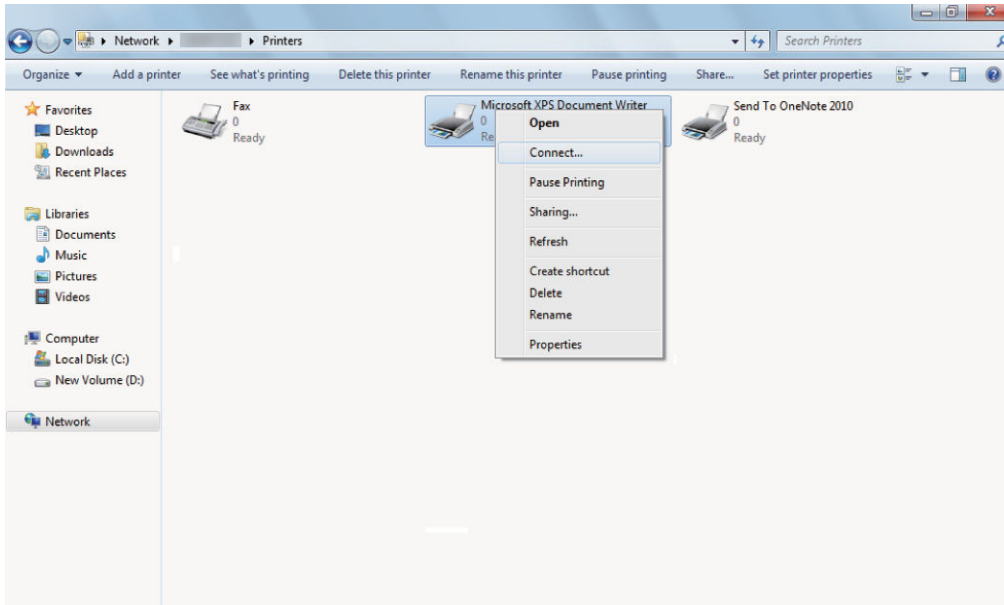
- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.
- 6 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 7 Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound**.
  - b Select **Printers**.
  - c Right-click the printer you just created and click **Properties**.
  - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## • For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
  - b Select **Printers**.
  - c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
  - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## • For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start** → your user name → **Network** (**Start** → **Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
  - b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
  - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## • For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012

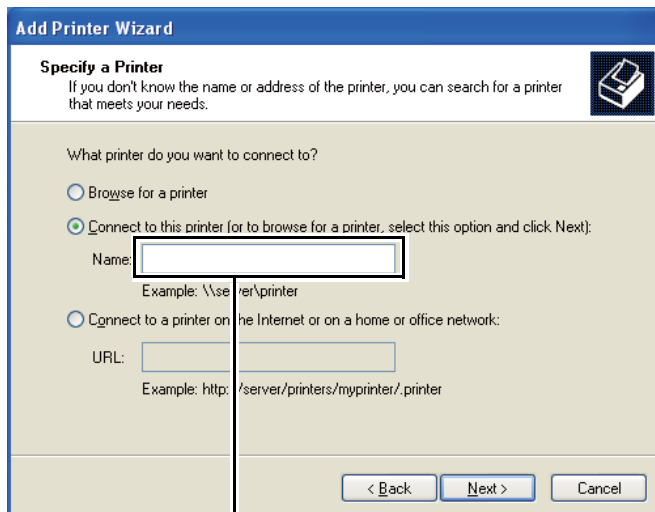
- 1 Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Enter **Network** in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
  - b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
  - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## ■ Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the print driver is fully installed on each client computer. Network clients retain control of driver modifications. The client computer handles the print job processing.

### • For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** (**Add Printer** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition) to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.
- 3 Click **Next**.
- 4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**.  
If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.  
If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
  - a Click **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)**.
  - b Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

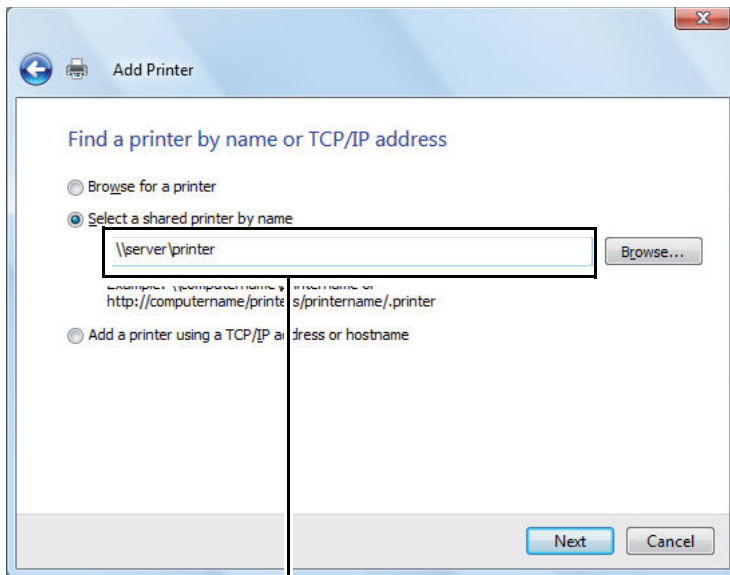
The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network.

The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

- 5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select the printer, and then click **Next**.  
If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver.  
If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.
- 7 Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Next**.
  - Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
  - Click **Yes** to print a test page for verifying installation.
- 8 Click **Finish**.  
When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## • For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.  
If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.  
If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
  - a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
  - b Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network.

The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

- 4 Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Next**.
  - Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
  - Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.
- 5 Click **Finish**.  
When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## • For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

- a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
- b Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you will need to provide a path to available drivers.

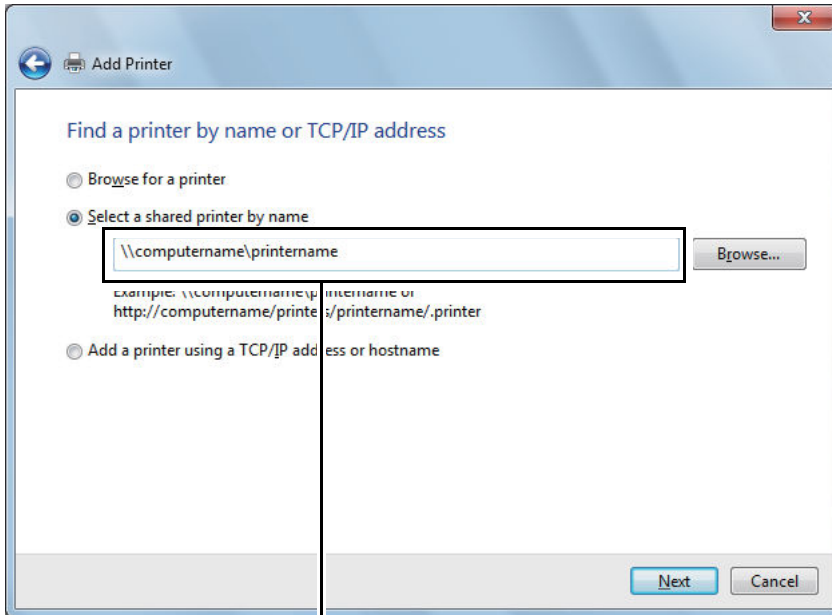
- 4 Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Next**.
  - Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
  - Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.
- 5 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.



## • For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.  
If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.  
If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
  - a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
  - b Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you will need to provide the path to the available driver.

- 4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Finish**.
  - Click **Set as the default printer** to set this printer as the default printer.
  - Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## • For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012

**1** On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.

**2** Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

**3** If the printer is listed, select the printer.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

**a** Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer** → **Select a shared printer by name**.

**b** Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you will need to provide a path to available drivers.

**4** Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.

**5** Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Finish**.

- Click **Set as the default printer** to set this printer as the default printer.
- Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

# Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X

---

For information on how to install the print driver, refer to the PostScript User Guide.

# Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Linux (CUPS)

---

This section provides information for installing or setting up the print driver with CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) on Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5/6 Desktop (x86) or SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86).

## NOTE:

- When using a CD drive in a Linux environment, you need to mount the CD according to your system environment. The command strings are mount/media/CD-ROM.

This section includes:

- ["Installing the Print Driver" on page 96](#)
- ["Setting Up the Queue" on page 97](#)
- ["Setting the Default Queue" on page 98](#)
- ["Specifying the Printing Options" on page 99](#)
- ["Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator" on page 100](#)
- ["Uninstalling the Print Driver" on page 101](#)

## ■ Installing the Print Driver

This section includes:

- ["For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop \(x86\)" on page 96](#)
- ["For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 \(x86\)" on page 96](#)

## NOTE:

- The print driver `Fuji_Xerox-DocuPrint_CP405-x.x-x.noarch.rpm` is included in the `linux` folder in the `Eng` folder on the *Driver CD Kit*.

### • For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

- 1 Copy the .rpm file in the following path to your desired location.  
D:\Eng\linux (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Double-click the .rpm file.
- 3 Click **Install**.
- 4 Enter the administrator password, and click **Authenticate**.  
Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

### • For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

- 1 Copy the .rpm file in the following path to your desired location.  
D:\Eng\linux (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Double-click the .rpm file.
- 3 Click **Install**.
- 4 Enter the administrator password, and click **Authenticate**.  
Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

## ■ Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

### NOTE:

- When you have finished setting up the queue, you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.  
However, you may be able to print only from the default queue depending on the application. In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see also "[Setting the Default Queue](#)" on page 98.

### • For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

- 1 Open the URL "<http://localhost:631>" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Add Printer**.
- 4 Enter **root** as the user name, and then enter the administrator password.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Select either of the following according to the type of your printer connection.  
For network connections:
  - a Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Other Network Printers** menu, and then click **Continue**.
  - b Enter the IP address of the printer in **Connection**.  
Format: **lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx** (the IP address of the printer)
  - c Click **Continue**.
  - d Enter the name of the printer in **Name** in the **Add Printer** window, and then click **Continue**.  
You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.  
If you want to share the printer, select the **Share This Printer** check box.For USB connections:
  - a Select **FUJI XEROX DocuPrint XXX** from the **Local Printers** menu, and then click **Continue**.
  - b Enter the name of the printer in **Name** in the **Add Printer** window, and then click **Continue**.  
You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.  
If you want to share the printer, select the **Share This Printer** check box.
- 7 Select **FX** from the **Make** menu, and then click **Continue**.
- 8 Select **FX DocuPrint XXX** from the **Model** menu, and then click **Add Printer**.  
The setup is complete.  
You can optionally specify the default options settings of the printer.

## • For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

- 1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on **Application Browser**.
- 2 Enter the administrator password.  
**YaST Control Center** is activated.
- 3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.  
The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.  
For network connections:
  - a Click **Add**.  
The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.
  - b Click **Connection Wizard**.  
The **Connection Wizard** dialog box opens.
  - c Select **Line Printer Daemon (LPD) Protocol** from **Access Network Printer or Printserver Box via**.
  - d Enter the IP address of the printer in **IP Address or Host Name**.
  - e Select **Fuji Xerox** in **Select the printer manufacturer**.
  - f Click **OK**.  
The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box appears.
  - g Select **DocuPrint XXX vx.x [FujiXerox/Fuji\_Xerox\_DocuPrint\_XXX.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

### NOTE:

- You can specify the printer name in **Set Name**.

For USB connections:

- a Click **Add**.  
The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.  
The printer name is displayed in the **Determine Connection** list.
- b Select **DocuPrint XXX vx.x. [FujiXerox/Fuji\_Xerox\_DocuPrint.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

### NOTE:

- You can specify the printer name in **Set Name**.

- 4 Confirm the settings, and then click **OK**.

## ■ Setting the Default Queue

### • For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

- 1 Select **Applications** → **System Tools** → **Terminal**.
- 2 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Enter the administrator password)
lpadmin -d (Enter the queue name)
```

## • For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

- 1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on **Application Browser**.
- 2 Enter the administrator password.  
YaST Control Center is activated.
- 3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.  
The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.
- 4 Click **Edit**.  
A dialog box to modify the specified queue opens.
- 5 Confirm that the printer you want to set is selected in the **Connection** list.
- 6 Select the **Default Printer** check box.
- 7 Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

## ■ Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as the color mode or 2-sided printing.

## • For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

- 1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 4 Click the queue name for which you want to specify the printing options.
- 5 Enter **root** as the user name, and enter the administrator password.
- 6 Click the **Administration** drop-down list box, and then select **Modify Printer**.
- 7 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue** or **Modify Printer**.  
The message **Printer xxx has been modified successfully.** appears.  
The setting is complete.

## • For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

- 1 Open a web browser.
- 2 Enter **http://localhost:631/admin** in the address bar, and press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Enter **root** as the user name, and enter the administrator password.  
The **CUPS** window appears.

### NOTE:

- Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to ["Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator" on page 100.](#)

- 4 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 5 Click **Modify Printer** on the printer.
- 6 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue**.
- 7 Enter **root** as the user name, enter administrator password and click **OK**.  
The message **Printer xxx has been modified successfully.** appears.  
The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

## ■ Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 and 11, you must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

## • For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

- 1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on **Application Browser**.
- 2 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Enter the administrator password)
lppasswd -g sys -a root
(Enter the password for authority as the printer
administrator after the Enter password prompt.)
(Reenter the password for authority as the printer
administrator after the Enter password again prompt.)
```



## ■ Uninstalling the Print Driver

### • For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

- 1 Select **Applications** → **System Tools** → **Terminal**.
- 2 Enter the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Enter the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Enter the print queue name)
```

- 3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.
- 4 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
rpm -e Fuji_Xerox-DocuPrint_CP405-x.x-x.noarch
```

The print driver is uninstalled.

### • For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

- 1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on **Application Browser**.
- 2 Enter the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Enter the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Enter the print queue name)
```

- 3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.
- 4 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
rpm -e Fuji_Xerox-DocuPrint_CP405-x.x-x
```

The print driver is uninstalled.

# Configuring Wireless Settings (Windows & Mac OS X)

---

This section includes:

- ["Determining the Wireless Network Settings" on page 102](#)
- ["Configuring the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 103](#)
- ["Reconfiguring the Wireless Settings" on page 111](#)

## Determining the Wireless Network Settings

You need to know the settings for the wireless network to set up the wireless printer. For details of the settings, contact your network administrator.

Wireless Settings	SSID	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Mode	Specifies the network mode from Ad-hoc or Infrastructure.
Security Settings	Security	Selects the encryption method from No Security, Mixed mode PSK*, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA2-PSK-AES, and WEP.
	Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit WEP key from the list.
	WEP Key	Specifies the WEP key used through the wireless network only when WEP is selected as the encryption method.
	Pass Phrase	Specifies the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 bytes long only when Mixed mode PSK*, WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES is selected as the encryption method.

---

\* Mixed mode PSK automatically selects an available encryption method from WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.

---

# Configuring the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

This section describes how to configure a wireless printer adapter through Easy Install Navi, operator panel and CentreWare Internet Services.

You can select a method to configure a wireless printer adapter from the following:

Wizard Setup through (Windows only)	USB Cable (recommended)
	WPS-PBC*1
	WPS-PIN*2*3
	Operator Panel*3
	Ethernet Cable
	CentreWare Internet Services
Non-Wizard Setup through	WPS-PBC*3
	WPS-PIN*2*3
	Operator Panel
	CentreWare Internet Services

\*1 WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

\*2 WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

\*3 WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK-AES, WPA-PSK-TKIP, Open (No Security).

## IMPORTANT:

- Ensure that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer before you configure the wireless settings other than through Ethernet cable and CentreWare Internet Services.

## NOTE:

- Before you configure the wireless settings on the operator panel, you need to set up the wireless network settings on your computer. For details, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless LAN access point or if your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, configure the wireless settings using that tool.
- If the `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Menu` menu.

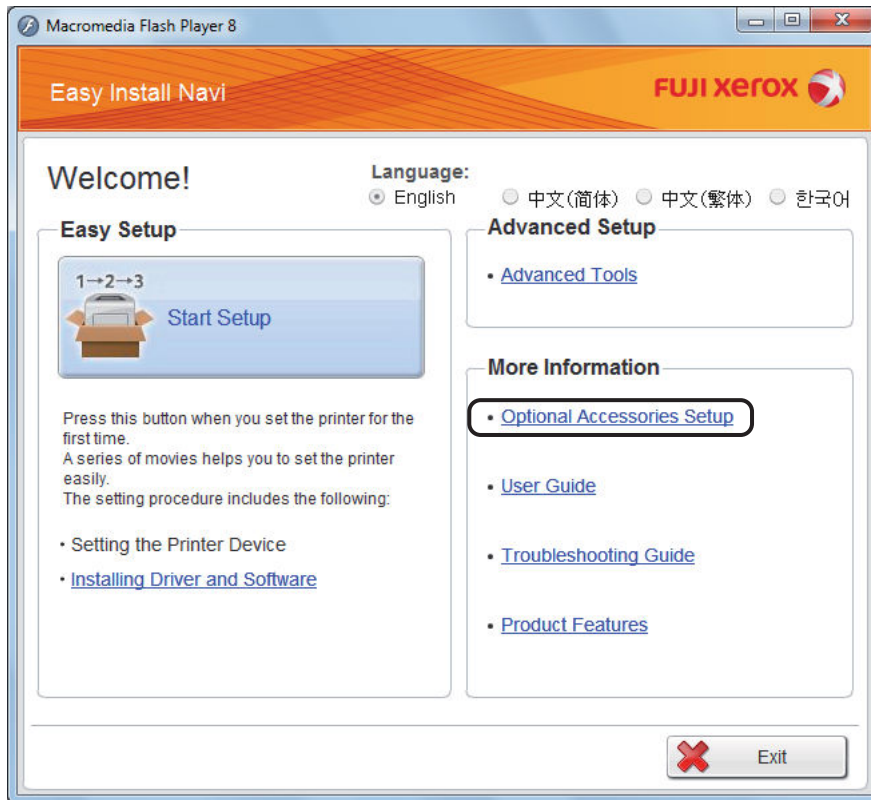
## • Using Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Printer Adapter (Windows Only)

You can configure the wireless adapter with the following connection methods:

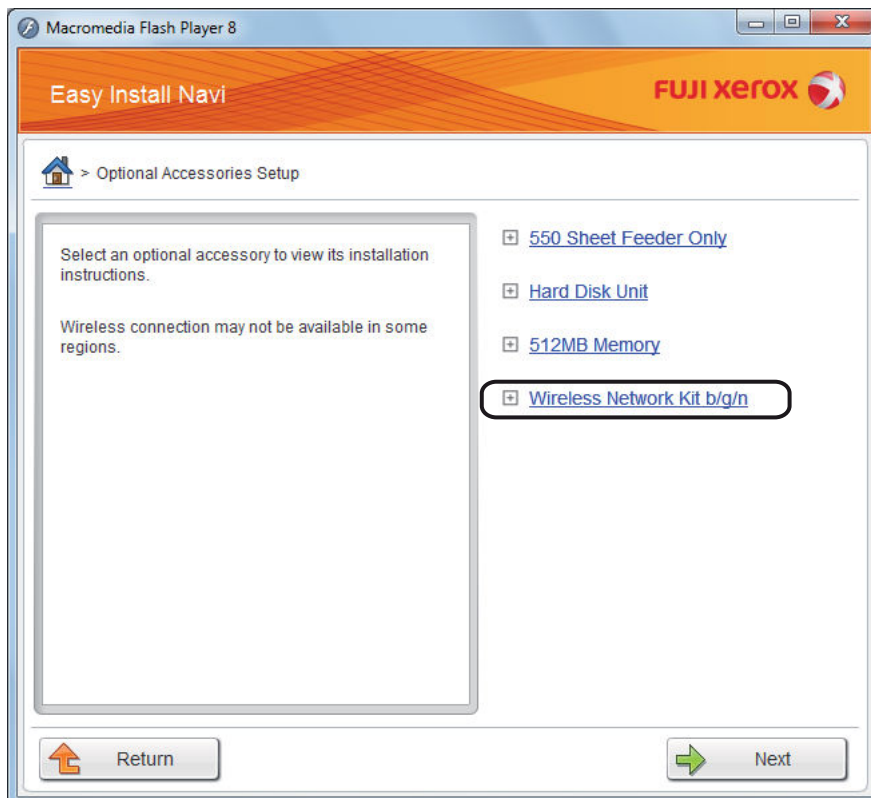
- USB cable
- WPS-PBC
- WPS-PIN
- Operator Panel
- Ethernet Cable
- CentreWare Internet Services

The following procedure uses USB cable for connection method as an example.

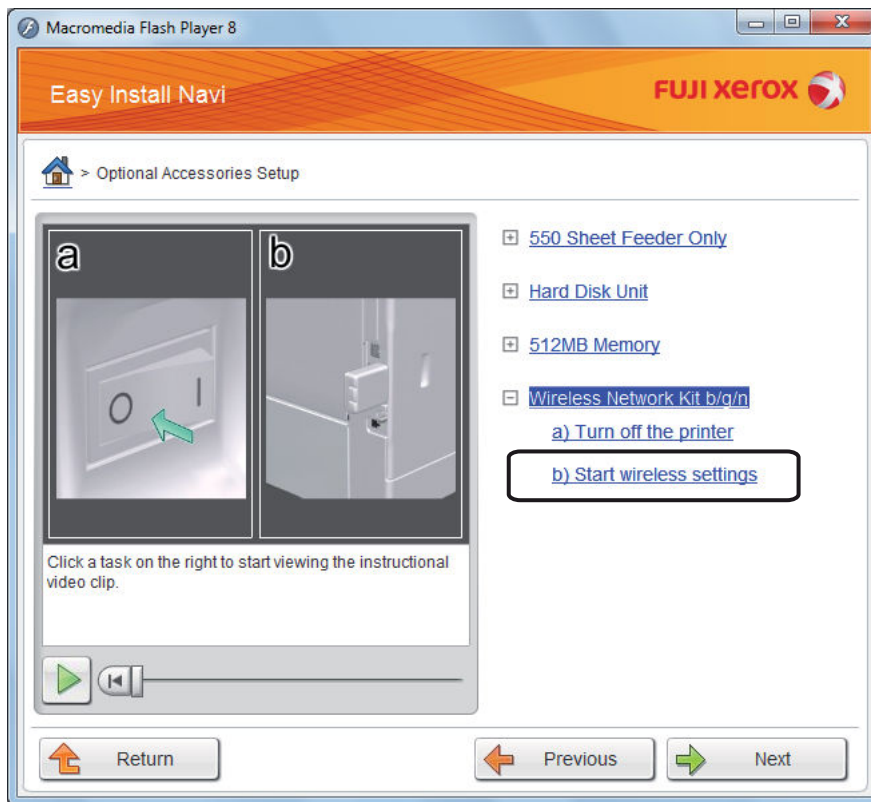
- 1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* provided with the printer in your computer. Easy Install Navi launches automatically.
- 2 Click **Optional Accessories Setup**.



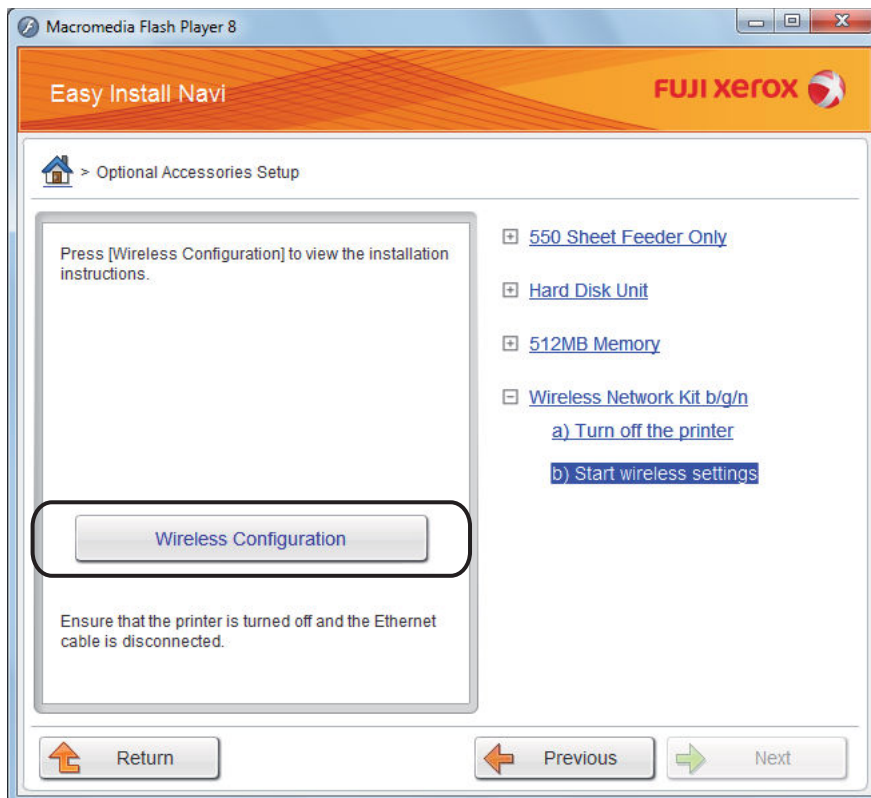
- 3 Click **Wireless Network Kit b/g/n**.



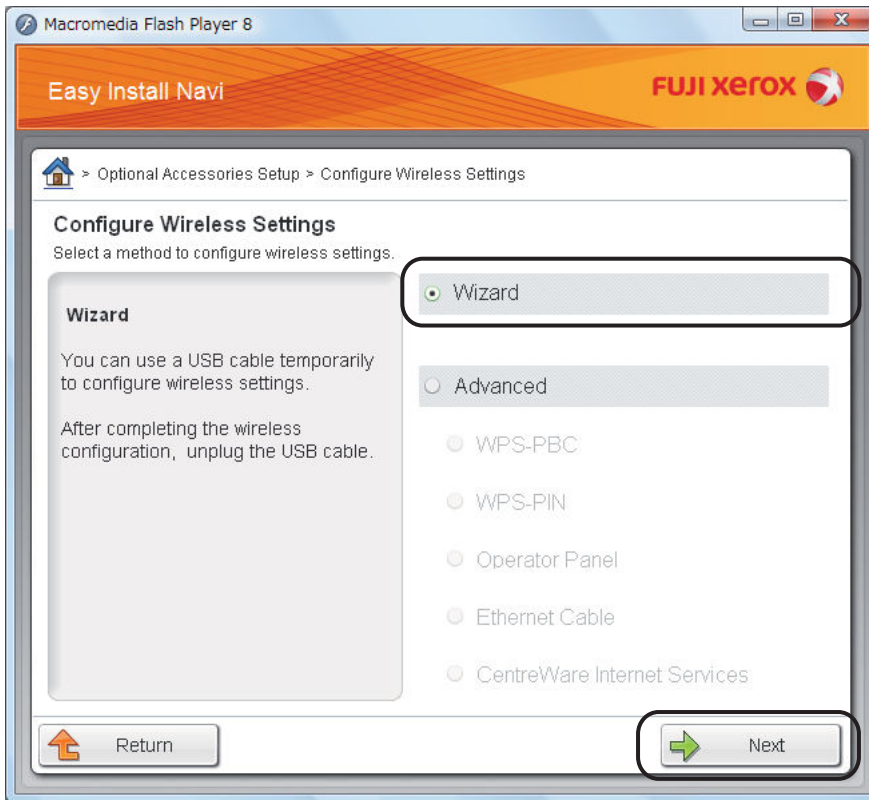
4 Click **Start wireless settings**.



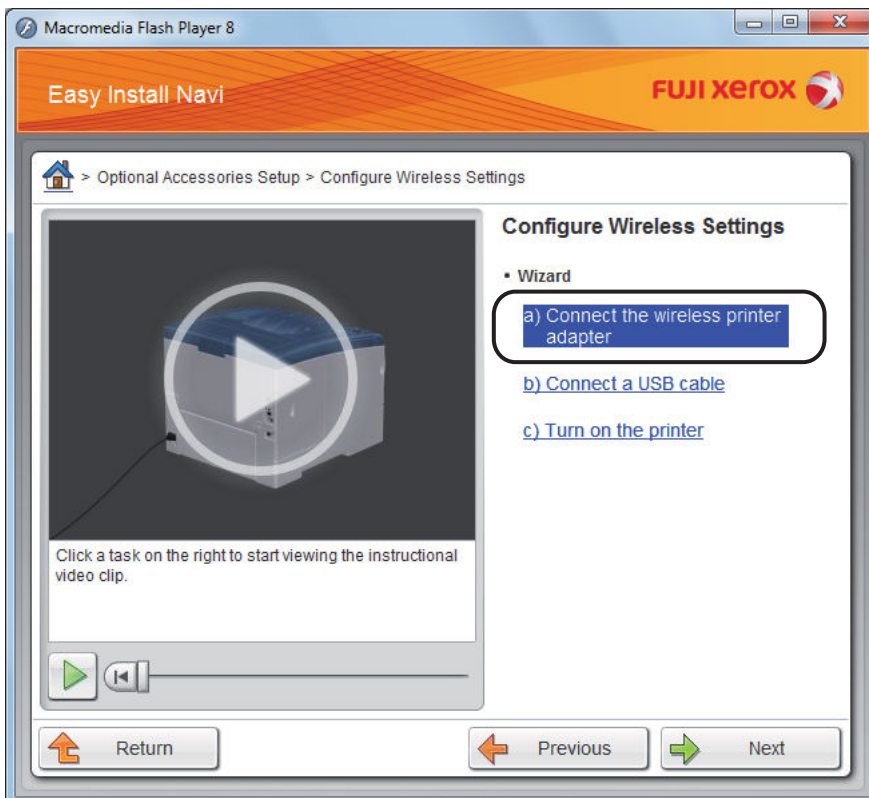
5 Click **Wireless Configuration**.



6 Select **Wizard**, and then click **Next**.



7 Click **Connect the wireless printer adapter**.



The instruction video starts.

Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

## • Using Non-Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Printer Adapter

For Mac OS X, you can configure a wireless settings only through non-wizard setup.

### NOTE:

- The optional wireless printer adapter must be installed on the printer. For details about installing a wireless printer adapter, see ["Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 45](#).

You can configure the wireless printer adapter with the following connection methods:







- WPS-PBC
- WPS-PIN
- Operator Panel
- CentreWare Internet Services

### WPS-PBC

You can start Push Button Control only from the operator panel.

### NOTE:

- WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `WPS Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Push Btn. Ctrl`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Start`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Ensure that the message `Please wait WPS Setting` is displayed, and start pressing the button on the wireless LAN access point, within two minutes of the step 7 operation.

### NOTE:

- For details about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.








When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless settings are correctly configured.

## WPS-PIN

The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

### NOTE:

- WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by entering PIN assignments to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through an access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.
- Before WPS-PIN starts, you will need to enter your PIN code at the web page of the wireless LAN access point. For details, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless LAN access point.

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `WPS Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `PIN Code`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Write down the displayed 8-digit PIN code or select `Print PIN Code`, and then press the  button. The PIN code is printed.
- 7 Select `Start Config.`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Ensure that the message `Please wait WPS Setting` is displayed, and enter the PIN code displayed on step 7 into the wireless LAN access point.






### NOTE:

- For details about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless settings are correctly configured.


## Operator Panel

### Auto SSID Setup

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the  button.  
The printer automatically searches the access points on wireless network.
- 5 Select the desired access point, and then press the  button.  
If the desired access point does not appear, go to ["Manual SSID Setup" on page 109](#).

### NOTE:

- Some hidden SSID may not be displayed. If the SSID is not detected, turn on SSID broadcast from the router.









- 6 Enter the WEP key or pass phrase, and then press the  button.  
The `Restart Printer to apply setting message` appears.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.  
Wireless settings are correctly configured.

### IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.




## Manual SSID Setup

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Manual Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Enter the SSID, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select the network mode from `Infrastructure` and `Ad-hoc` depending on your environment, and then press the  button.  
When you select `Infrastructure`, proceed to step 8.  
When you select `Ad-hoc`, proceed to step 9.
- 8 Select the encryption method from `Mixed mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, `WPA2-PSK-AES`, `WEP`, and then press the  button.




### IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

To use `Mixed mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, or `WPA2-PSK-AES` encryption:

- a Select the desired encryption method.
- b Enter the pass phrase in the `PassPhrase Entry` text box, and then press the  button.

To use `WEP` encryption:

- a Select `WEP (64Bit)`, `WEP (128Bit)`, and then press the  button.
- b Enter the `WEP key`, and then press the  button.
- c Select the desired transmit key from `Auto` or `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`, and then press the  button.



The `Restart Printer to apply setting` message appears.

Proceed to step 10.

- 9 Select `WEP` and then press the  button.

### IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

- a Enter the `WEP key`, and then press the  button.
- b Select the desired transmit key from `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`, and then press the  button.

The `Restart Printer to apply setting` message appears.

- 10 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Wireless settings are correctly configured.

### IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

## CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off and the wireless printer adapter is connected to the printer.
- 2 Connect the printer to the network with an Ethernet cable.  
For details about connecting the Ethernet cable, see ["Connecting Printer to Computer or Network" on page 67](#).
- 3 Turn on the printer.
- 4 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.
- 5 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 6 Click **Wireless**.
- 7 Enter the SSID in the **SSID** text box.
- 8 Select **Ad hoc** or **Infrastructure** in the **Network Type** drop-down menu.
- 9 Select the encryption method from **WEP 128-bit HEX (26 Bytes)**, **WEP 128-bit ASCII (13 Bytes)**, **WEP 64-bit HEX (10 Bytes)**, **WEP 64-bit ASCII (5 Bytes)**, **WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES**, **WPA-PSK TKIP**, and **Mixed Mode PSK** in the **Encryption** drop-down menu, and then set each item for the encryption method selected.

### IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

### NOTE:

- For details on each item, see the Help on CentreWare Internet Services.

- 10 Click **Apply** to apply the settings.
- 11 Turn off the printer, disconnect the Ethernet cable and turn it on again.  
Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

### IMPORTANT:




- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

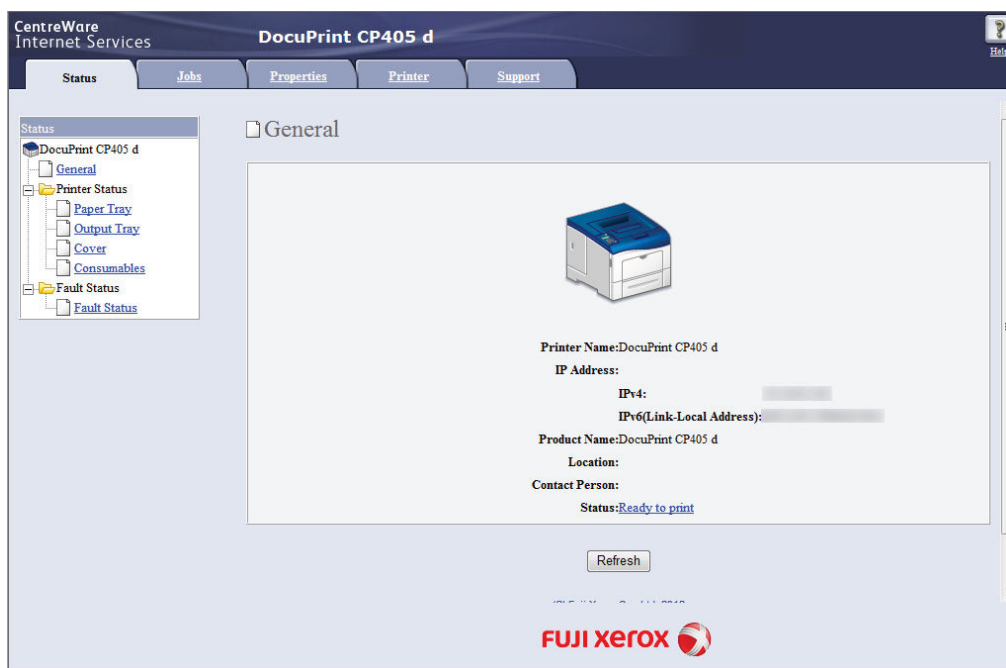
# Reconfiguring the Wireless Settings

To change the wireless setting through the wireless connection from your computer, perform the following.

## NOTE:

- Ensure that the wireless connection setting is completed in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 103.
- The following settings are available when the network mode is set to infrastructure in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 103.

- 1 Check the IP address of the printer.
  - a On the operator panel, press the  (**Menu**) button.
  - b Select **Report / List**, and then press the  button.
  - c Select **Printer Settings**, and then press the  button.  
The Printer Settings page is printed.
  - d Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Network Setup** on the Printer Settings page.
- 2 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.



- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 Click **Wireless**.
- 5 Change the wireless settings of the printer.
- 6 Click **Apply** to apply the settings.
- 7 Reboot the printer.
- 8 Change the wireless settings on your computer or access point accordingly.

## NOTE:

- To change the wireless settings on your computer, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless LAN access point or if your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using that tool.



# Printing Basics

This chapter includes:

- ["About Print Media" on page 114](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 116](#)
- ["Loading Print Media" on page 120](#)
- ["Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 128](#)
- ["Printing" on page 129](#)
- ["Printing With Web Services on Devices \(WSD\)" on page 148](#)
- ["Using Digital Certificates" on page 150](#)

# About Print Media

---

This section includes:

- ["Print Media Usage Guidelines" on page 114](#)
- ["Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer" on page 115](#)
- ["Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 115](#)

Using paper that is not appropriate for the printer can cause paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. To achieve the best performance from your printer, we recommend you to use only the paper described in this section.

When using paper other than that recommended, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

## ■ Print Media Usage Guidelines

The printer tray accommodates various sizes and types of paper and other specialty media. Follow these guidelines when loading paper and media in the tray:

- Envelopes can be printed from the bypass tray.
- Fan paper or other specialty media before loading in the paper tray.
- Labels can be printed from the bypass tray.
- Do not print on label stock once a label has been removed from a sheet.
- Use only paper envelopes. Do not use envelopes with windows, metal clasps, or adhesives with release strips.
- Print all envelopes single-sided only.
- Some wrinkling and embossing may occur when printing envelopes.
- Do not overload the paper tray. Do not load print media above the fill line on the inside of the width guides.
- Adjust the width guides to fit the paper size.
- If excessive jams or wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package.



### **WARNING:**

- **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

### **See also:**

- ["Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 121](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray" on page 124](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray" on page 125](#)
- ["Printing on Custom Size Paper" on page 142](#)

## ■ Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fusing unit.
- Preprinted paper that requires a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than  $\pm 0.09$  inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms.  
In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.
- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, thermal paper, and short grain paper.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper.
- Recycled paper containing more than 25% post-consumer waste that does not meet DIN 19 309.
- Multiple-part forms or documents.
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when you print on talc or acid paper.

### **WARNING:**

- **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

## ■ Print Media Storage Guidelines

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines will help to avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- Store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 70 °F/21 °C and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store print media in dark, cool, relatively dry locations. Most paper items are susceptible to damage from ultraviolet (UV) and visible light. UV radiation, which is emitted by the sun and fluorescent bulbs, is particularly damaging to paper items. The intensity and length of exposure to visible light on paper items should be reduced as much as possible.
- Maintain constant temperature and relative humidity.
- Avoid attics, kitchens, garages, and basements for storing print media.
- Store print media flat. Print media should be stored on pallets, cartons, shelves, or in cabinets.
- Avoid having food or drinks in the area where print media is stored or handled.
- Do not open sealed packages of paper until you are ready to load them into the printer. Leave paper in the original packaging. For most commercial cut-size grades, the ream wrapper contains an inner lining that protects the paper from moisture loss or gain.
- Leave the media inside the bag until you are ready to use it; reinsert unused media in the bag and reseal it for protection. Some specialty media is packaged inside resealable plastic bags.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

# Supported Print Media

---

Using unsuitable print media may lead to paper jams, poor print quality, breakdown and damage to your printer. To use the features of this printer effectively, use the suggested print media that is recommended here.

## IMPORTANT:

- The toner may come off the print media, if it gets wet by water, rain, steam and so on. For details, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

## ■ Usable Print Media

The types of print media that can be used on this printer are as follows:

### Bypass Tray

---

<b>Paper Size</b>	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm) B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm) A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm) Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches) Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches) Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches) Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches) Com 10 Envelope SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches) Monarch Envelope SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches) DL Envelope SEF (110 × 220 mm) C5 Envelope SEF (162 × 229 mm) Custom size*: Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3–8.5 inches) Length: 127–355.6 mm (5–14 inches)
<b>Paper Type</b>	Plain (Lightweight) Plain (Heavyweight) Other Type Lightweight Cardstock Heavyweight Cardstock Light Glossy Cardstock Heavy Glossy Cardstock Labels (Lightweight) Labels (Heavyweight) Envelope Letterhead Hole Punched Colored
<b>Loading Capacity</b>	150 sheets of standard paper

---

\*:XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver does not support custom size paper.



# Standard 550 Sheet Tray and Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

<b>Paper Size</b>	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm) B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm) A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm) Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches) Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches) Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches) Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches) Custom size*: Width: 148–215.9 mm (5.83–8.5 inches) Length: 210–355.6 mm (8.27 –14 inches)
<b>Paper Type</b>	Plain (Lightweight) Plain (Heavyweight) Other Type Lightweight Cardstock Heavyweight Cardstock Light Glossy Cardstock Heavy Glossy Cardstock Letterhead Hole Punched Colored
<b>Loading Capacity</b>	550 sheets of standard paper

\*:XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver does not support custom size paper.

## NOTE:

- SEF indicates the paper feed direction; SEF stands for short-edge feed.
- For Plain and Label paper, you can set the paper density by selecting `Adjust Paper Type` (Lightweight or Heavyweight) under `Maintenance Mode` from the operator panel. Once you set the `Adjust Paper Type` settings, the printer uses the settings for Plain and Label paper.

## See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 121](#)
- ["Loading Letterhead in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 123](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray" on page 124](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray" on page 125](#)
- ["Loading Letterhead in the Bypass Tray" on page 126](#)

Printing on print media that differs from the paper size or paper type selected on the print driver, or loading print media into an unsuitable paper tray for printing, may lead to paper jams. To ensure that printing is correctly done, select the correct paper size, paper type, and paper tray.

## ■ Standard Paper and Tested Paper

The following paper and media are standard or usable for the printer.

When you print a generally used paper (which called general paper), please use a paper that suits the standard. To print clearly, Fuji Xerox recommends the standard paper shown in the following table. For information about the other paper and media, contact Fuji Xerox Customer Support Center.

	Paper Name	Size	Weight	Paper Type	Notes
Standard Paper	Fuji Xerox P	A4	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Medium-thickness paper for in-house documents and general office use.
	Fuji Xerox C2	A4	70 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Paper for general office use with minimum see-through.
	XeroxBusiness4200	Letter	20 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Color Xpressions Select	Letter	24 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
Supported Paper	XeroxBusiness4200	Legal	20 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Hammermill Tidal MP 20lb 8.5 x 11	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Cascade X-9000	Folio		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Cascade X-9000	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Color Xpressions Select	Legal	24 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	XeroxBusiness4200	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Hammermill Writing Bond	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Hammermill Laser Print	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Weyerhaeuser First Choice (No. 1 bond acid free)	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	GP Laser1000	Executive		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Color Xpressions Elite	Letter	28 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	XeroxBusiness4200	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Fuji Xerox P	B5	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Medium-thickness paper for in-house documents and general office use.
	Fuji Xerox P	A5		Plain (Lightweight)	
	Fuji Xerox FR	A4	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Environmentally-conscious paper (50% of pulp sourced from plantation-grown trees + 50% of recycled pulp).
	Fuji Xerox G70	A4	67 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Recycled copy/printer paper compounded 70% of recycled pulp.
	Fuji Xerox C2R	A4	70 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	70% recycled pulp paper.
	Xerox Premier 80	A4	80 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Business 80			Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Data Copy			Plain (Heavyweight)	
Steinbeis Recycling Copy			Plain (Heavyweight)		
Yes Bronze			Plain (Heavyweight)		
Xerox Premier	A5		Plain (Heavyweight)		

	<b>Paper Name</b>	<b>Size</b>	<b>Weight</b>	<b>Paper Type</b>	<b>Notes</b>	
Supported Paper	Fuji Xerox J	A4	82 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)	Hi-quality paper suitable for a variety of uses, including project proposals and color samples.	
	Fuji Xerox J	B5		Plain (Heavyweight)		
	Xerox Premier 90	A4	90 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)		
	Xerox-90 Colotech	A4		Plain (Heavyweight)		
	Fuji Xerox J coat	A4	95 gsm	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock		Print one sheet at a time using the bypass tray.
	Fuji Xerox JD	A4	98 gsm			Double-sided paper suitable for a variety of uses, including brochures and booklet.
	Fuji Xerox JD	B5				
	JD coat 104.7	A4	105 gsm	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock		Print one sheet at a time using the bypass tray.
	Chuan Mei 70 gsm	A4	70 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)		
	EXCEL A4	A4	80 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)		
	Special Paper	Label No cut	A4	Label		Labels (Lightweight)
		Label No cut	A4			Labels (Lightweight)
		Avery Labels 5165	Letter			Labels (Lightweight)
Columbia C0131/C0125		Com-10	Envelope	Envelope		
Monroe Brand		Monarch (98.4 × 190.5)		Envelope		
River Series		DL (110 × 220)		Envelope		
River Series		C5 (162 × 229)		Envelope		
Colorpaper Cream		A4	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)		
Colorpaper Light Blue				Plain (Lightweight)		
Colorpaper Pink				Plain (Lightweight)		
Colorpaper Light Green				Plain (Lightweight)		
Premier TFC 160		A4	160 gsm	Lightweight Cardstock		
Xerox Color Xpression Planet 20		Letter	65 lb	Heavyweight Cardstock		
Recycled Business Card White		A4	190 gsm	Heavyweight Cardstock		
Classic Crest Super Smooth Cover 80lb		Letter	216 gsm	Heavyweight Cardstock		

# Loading Print Media

---

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading any print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually indicated on the print media package.

## ■ Capacity

The standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder can hold:

- 550 sheets of the standard paper.

The bypass tray can hold:

- 150 sheets of the standard paper.

## ■ Print Media Dimensions

The maximum dimensions of print media that the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder can handle are:

- Width: 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length: 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)

The maximum dimensions of print media that the bypass tray can handle are:

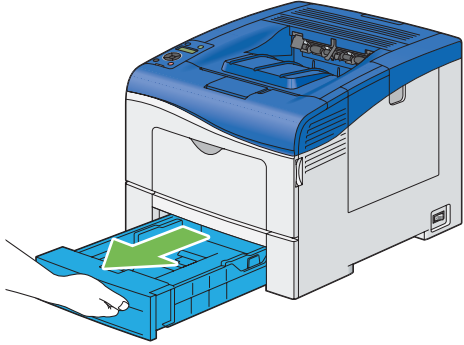
- Width: 76.2 mm (3 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length: 127 mm (5 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)

## ■ Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

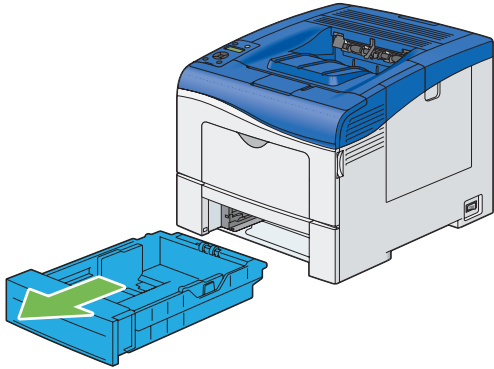
### NOTE:

- To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet print media in your printer.

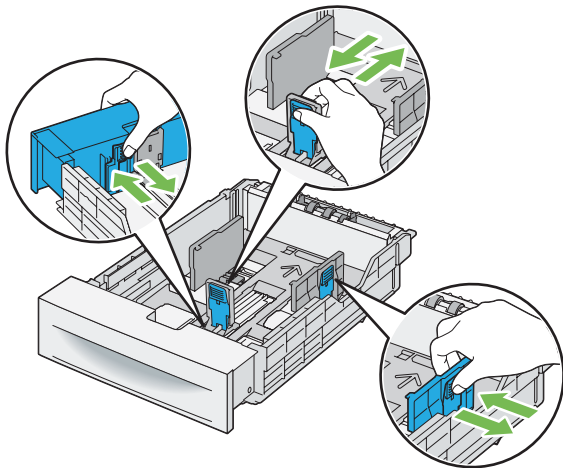
- 1 Pull the tray out of the printer about 200 mm.



- 2 Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



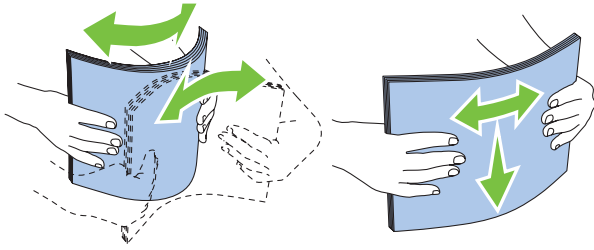
- 3 Adjust the paper guides.



### NOTE:

- When loading Legal size or user-specified print media, slide the extendable part of the tray while pinching the lever.

- 4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets and fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.

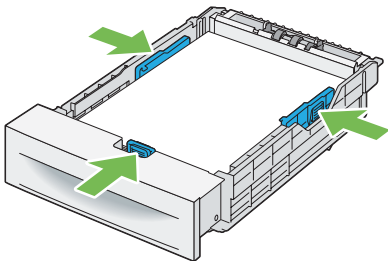


- 5 Load the print media into the tray with the recommended print side facing up.

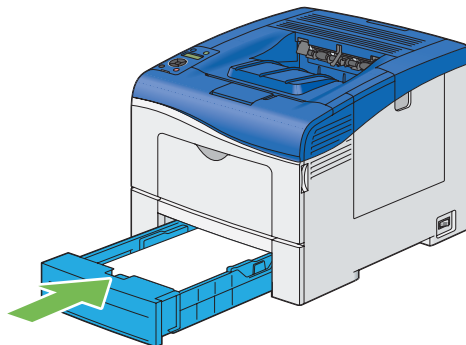
**NOTE:**

- Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.
- When loading coated paper, load coated paper one sheet at a time.

- 6 Align the width guides and length guide against the edges of the print media.

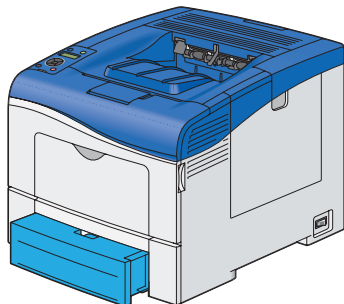


- 7 After confirming that the guides are securely adjusted, insert the tray into the printer.



**NOTE:**

- If the front side of the tray is extended, the tray protrudes when it is inserted into the printer.

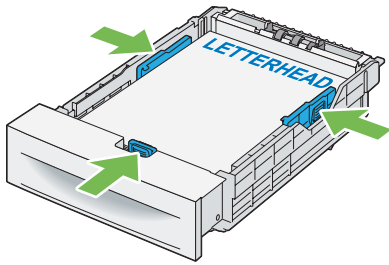


- 8 On the operator panel, select the appropriate paper size, and then press the **OK** button.

- 9 Select the appropriate paper type, and then press the **OK** button.

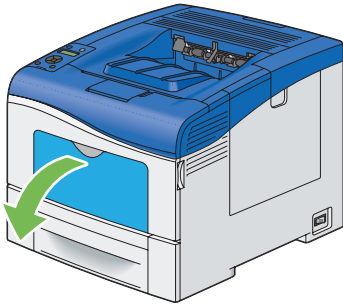
## Loading Letterhead in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

When you use the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder, letterhead and hole punched paper must be inserted top edge first with the print side facing up.

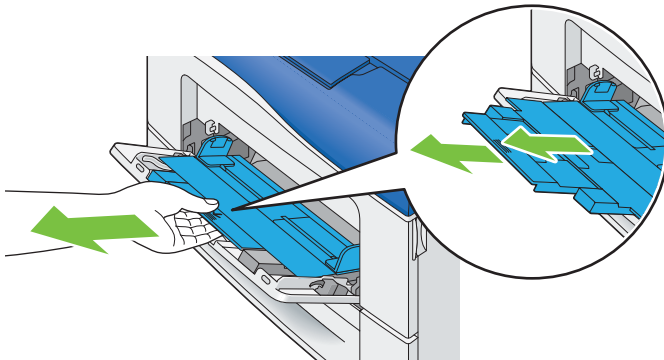


## ■ Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray

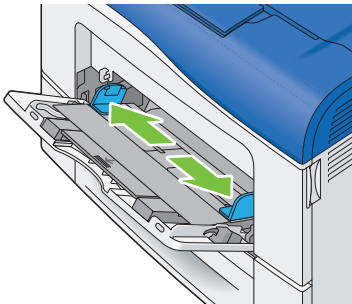
- 1 Gently pull open the bypass tray cover.



- 2 Extend the extension tray as necessary.



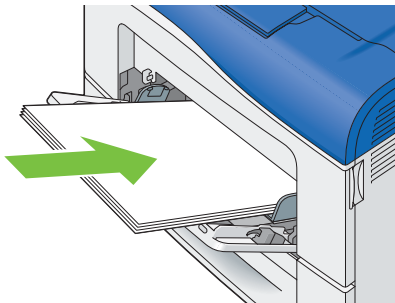
- 3 Slide the width guides to the edge of the tray. The width guides should be fully extended.



- 4 Insert all media face up and top edge first into the bypass tray.

### NOTE:

- Do not force the print media into the bypass tray.

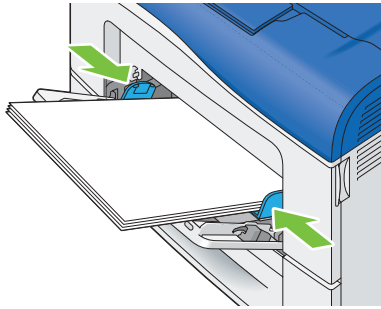




- Slide both width guides until they rest lightly against the edge of the print media stack.

**NOTE:**

- Do not force the print media into the bypass tray.



- On the operator panel, select the appropriate paper size, and then press the **OK** button.

**NOTE:**

- If you use the driver setting, select `Driver Size`.

- Select the appropriate paper type, and then press the **OK** button.

## Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray

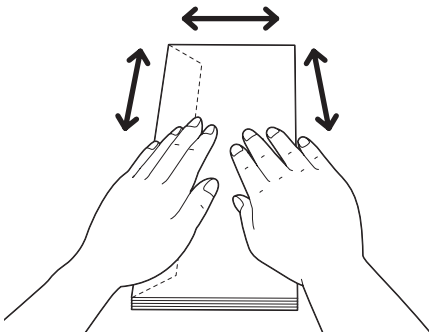
Use the following guidelines when loading envelopes in the bypass tray:

**IMPORTANT:**

- Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

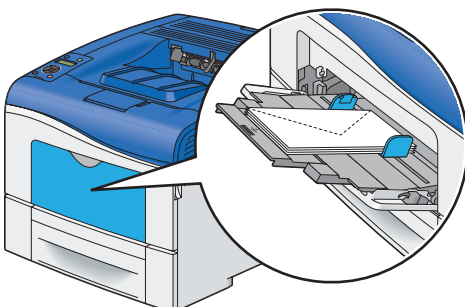
**NOTE:**

- The maximum height (quantity) of envelopes that can be loaded in the bypass tray is approximately 15 mm (0.59 inches) (15 envelopes).
- If you do not load envelopes in the bypass tray right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, press firmly across the whole envelopes to flatten them as shown below before loading the envelopes in the bypass tray.



### • Com 10, Monarch, or DL

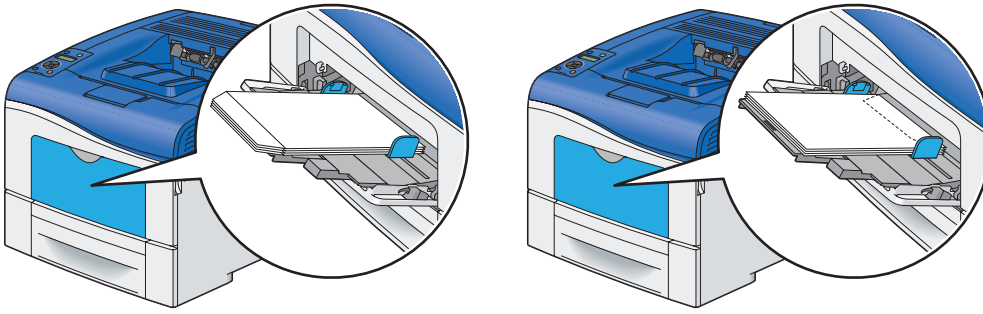
Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the left when you face towards the printer.



## • C5

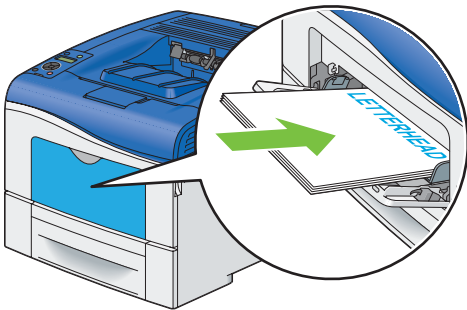
Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps open or closed and the print side up.

Ensure that the flaps come at the bottom with the flaps open or at the top with the flaps closed when you face towards the printer.



## Loading Letterhead in the Bypass Tray

When you use the bypass tray, letterhead and hole punched paper must be inserted top edge first with the print side facing up.



## Using the Bypass Tray

- Load only one size and type of print media during a single print job.
- To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality print media that is designed for use in laser printer. For more guidelines on print media, see ["Print Media Usage Guidelines" on page 114](#).
- Do not add or remove print media when there is still print media in the bypass tray or when the printer is printing from the bypass tray. This may result in a paper jam.
- Print media should be loaded with the recommended print side up and the top of the print media going into the bypass tray first.
- Do not place objects on the bypass tray. Also, avoid pressing down or applying excessive force on it.
- The icons on the bypass tray show how to load the bypass tray with print media, and how to turn an envelope for printing.

# Linking Trays

When the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed on the printer, the printer automatically links the trays when you load the same size and type of print media in them. The first tray will be utilized until the media runs out after which the next tray will be used.

**NOTE:**

- The print media should be the same size and type in each tray.
- The bypass tray cannot be linked to any of the tray.

After loading the selected trays with the same size and type of print media, select the `Paper Type` setting in the `Tray Settings` menu for each tray.

To disable tray linking change the paper type in one of the trays to a unique value.

**NOTE:**

- If different types of print media of the same size are loaded in each tray, the printer will automatically link them if the paper type is not specified in the print driver properties/preferences.

# Setting Paper Sizes and Types

---

When loading print media in the tray, set the paper size and type on the operator panel before printing.




## See also:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 164](#)

This section includes:



- ["Setting Paper Sizes" on page 128](#)
- ["Setting Paper Types" on page 128](#)

## ■ Setting Paper Sizes

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Tray Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired tray, and then press the  button.

### NOTE:




- When you select `Bypass Tray`, `MPT Mode` is set to `Driver Specified by default`. Select `Panel Specified for MPT Mode` to specify the paper size and type on the operator panel.

- 4 Select `Paper Size`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the correct paper size for the print media loaded, and then press the  button.

## ■ Setting Paper Types



### IMPORTANT:

- Paper type settings must match those of the actual print media loaded in the tray or the feeder. Otherwise, print-quality problems can occur.

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Tray Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired tray, and then press the  button.

### NOTE:

- When you select `Bypass Tray`, `MPT Mode` is set to `Driver Specified by default`. Select `Panel Specified for MPT Mode` to specify the paper size and type on the operator panel.

- 4 Select `Paper Type`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the correct paper type for the print media loaded, and then press the  button.

# Printing

---

This section covers how to print certain information from your printer and how to cancel a job.

This section includes:

- ["Sending a Job to Print" on page 129](#)
- ["Canceling a Print Job" on page 130](#)
- ["Using the Stored Print Feature" on page 131](#)
- ["Printing PDF Files Using PDF Bridge \(Windows Only\)" on page 133](#)
- ["Selecting Printing Options" on page 137](#)
- ["Printing Custom Size Paper" on page 140](#)
- ["Auditron" on page 144](#)
- ["Checking Status of Print Data" on page 145](#)
- ["Printing With AirPrint" on page 145](#)
- ["Printing a Report Page" on page 146](#)
- ["Printer Settings" on page 147](#)

## ■ Sending a Job to Print

To support all of the printer features, use the print driver. When you choose **Print** from a software program, a window representing the print driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job that you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver override the default menu settings selected from the operator panel.

You may need to click **Preferences** from the initial **Print** box to see all of the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the print driver window, open the Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Microsoft® Windows® application:

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 From the application menu, select **Print**.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the system settings as appropriate (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 Click **Preferences** to adjust system settings that are not available from the first screen, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

## ■ Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a job.

This section includes:

- ["Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel" on page 130](#)
- ["Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows" on page 130](#)

### Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

- 1 Press the  (**Stop**) button.

Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

### Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

#### • Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the bottom right corner of the taskbar.

- 1 Double-click the printer icon.  
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 2 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 3 Press **Delete** key on the keyboard.
- 4 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

#### • Canceling a Job From the Desktop

- 1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).

Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server® 2003).

Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista®).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).

On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 8).

On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows Server 2012).

A list of available printers appears.

- 2 Double-click the printer that you selected when you sent the job for print.  
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 3 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 4 Press **Delete** key on the keyboard.
- 5 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

## ■ Using the Stored Print Feature

When you send a job to the printer, you can specify in the print driver to store the job in the memory or hard disk. When you are ready to print the job, go to the printer and use the operator panel menus to identify which job in the memory or hard disk you want to print.

### NOTE:

- The Stored Print feature is available when:
  - The optional 512MB memory is installed.
  - The RAM disk is enabled in the operator panel menu.
  - **RAM Disk** is set to **Installed** in the print driver.OR
  - The optional hard disk unit is installed.
  - **Hard Disk** is set to **Installed** in the print driver.
- The data in memory is cleared when the printer is turned off. The data on the optional hard disk unit is not cleared even when the printer is turned off.

The stored print feature includes the following job types:

- "Secure Print" on page 131
- "Sample Print" on page 131

## Secure Print

You can store print jobs secured with a passcode in the memory or hard disk. Users with the passcode can print them from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. You can select whether to delete the stored job after printing. Otherwise, the stored jobs remain in the memory until you delete them from the operator panel or turn off the printer, or in the hard disk until you delete them from the operator panel.

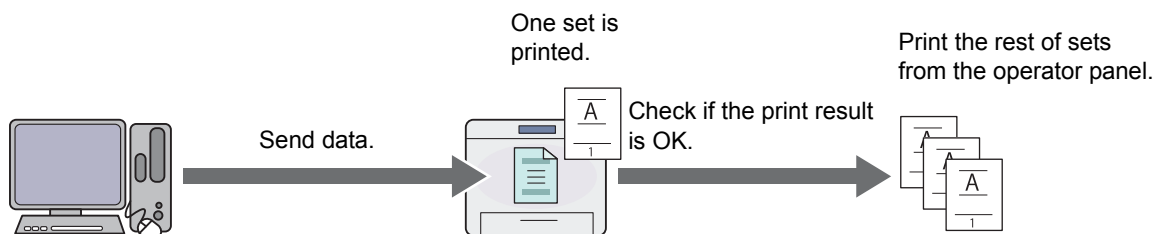


### NOTE:

- Secure Print is available when you use the PCL 6 or PS driver.

## Sample Print

The collated print job is stored in the memory or hard disk, but a single copy is printed automatically so you can check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.



### NOTE:

- Sample Print is available when you use the PCL 6 or PS driver.

# Procedures for Printing Stored Print

The following are procedures for storing and printing jobs.

## • Storing Print Jobs

For Secure Print, select **Secure Print** for **Job Type** and specify the user ID, passcode and job name by clicking **Setup** in the **Paper/Output** tab of the print driver. When you send the job to the printer, the job will be stored in the memory until you request to print from the operator panel or turn off the printer, or in the hard disk until you request to print it from the operator panel.

For Sample Print, select **Sample Set** for **Job Type** and specify the user ID and job name by clicking **Setup** in the **Paper/Output** tab of the print driver. When you send the job to the printer, the first set is printed. The remaining copies will be stored in the memory until you select to print them on the operator panel or turn off the printer, or in the hard disk until you select to print them on the operator panel.

### NOTE:

- If a print job is too large for the memory or hard disk available, the printer may display error messages.
- If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the print driver, the job's name will be identified using the printer's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

## • Printing the Stored Jobs

Once jobs are stored, you can use the operator panel to specify printing.

Select the job type you are using from Secure Print and Sample Print. Then, select your user ID from a list. Secure Print requires the passcode you specified in the driver when you sent the job.

To print the stored documents, use the procedure below.

- 1 Press the ◀ button.
- 2 Select `Secure Print` or `Sample Print`, and then press the (OK) button.
- 3 Select your user ID, and then press the (OK) button.  
If you select `Secure Print`, go to step 4.  
If you select `Sample Print`, go to step 5.
- 4 Enter the passcode you specified in the print driver, and then press the (OK) button.  
For details about specifying the passcode, see "[Specifying Your Passcode on the Operator Panel \(Secure Print\)](#)" on page 132.
- 5 Select the document you want to print, and then press the (OK) button.
- 6 Select `Print and Delete` or `Print and Save`, and then press the (OK) button.
- 7 Specify the number of copies to be printed using the ▲ and ▼ buttons, and then press the (OK) button.  
The stored document will be printed.

## • Specifying Your Passcode on the Operator Panel (Secure Print)

When you select your user ID for Secure Print, a screen to enter the passcode appears.

Use the buttons on the operator panel to enter the numeric passcode you specified in the print driver. The passcode you entered will be displayed as asterisks (\*\*\*\*\*) to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid passcode, the message `Wrong password Re-enter` appears. Wait three seconds, or press the (OK) button to return to the screen for user selection.

When you enter a valid passcode, you have access to all print jobs matching the user name and passcode you entered. The print jobs matching the passcode you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or to delete jobs matching the passcode you entered. (See "[Printing the Stored Jobs](#)" on page 132 for more information.)



## • Deleting Stored Jobs

A job that has been stored will be deleted after printing if selected to do so on the operator panel. Otherwise, the job remains stored until you delete them on the operator panel.

### NOTE:

- The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off. The data on the optional hard disk unit is not cleared even when the printer is turned off.

## ■ Printing PDF Files Using PDF Bridge (Windows Only)

The printer has the PDF Bridge feature, which enables you to print PDF files directly without a print driver. Printing PDF files without a print driver is much easier and faster when compared to printing with a print driver. This section describes how to print PDF files using PDF Bridge.

This section includes:

- ["Supported PDF Files" on page 133](#)
- ["Using the ContentsBridge Utility" on page 133](#)
- ["Using the Commands" on page 133](#)

## Supported PDF Files

PDF files created on the following versions of Adobe® Acrobat® can be printed using PDF Bridge.

- Adobe Acrobat 5.X (excluding some of the features added to PDF1.4)
- Adobe Acrobat 6.X (excluding some of the features added to PDF1.5)
- Adobe Acrobat 7.X (excluding some of the features added to PDF1.6)

### NOTE:

- Some PDF files cannot be printed depending on how they are created. In such case, open the files and print them using a print driver.

## Using the ContentsBridge Utility

The ContentsBridge Utility is software that enables direct printing of PDF files by simply dragging and dropping files onto the icon. To use the ContentsBridge Utility, refer to the manual included on the *Driver CD Kit*.

## Using the Commands

You can also print PDF files using the `lpr` or `ftp` command. When you print using these commands, the following PDF settings on the operator panel become effective.

- Quantity
- 2-Sided Print
- Print Mode
- Password
- Collated
- Output Size
- Layout
- Output Color

### NOTE:

- When you print using the `lpr` command, the print quantity must be set also using `lpr` command. In such case, the Quantity setting on the operator panel becomes invalid. If you do not specify the quantity using the `lpr` command, the printer recognizes the quantity as "1 set".
- To print PDF files using the `lpr` or `ftp` command, you must enable the printer's LPD or FTP port using the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services (default: Enable).

## Using the lpr command

### NOTE:

- For Windows Vista or later, enable the lpr command first. The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.
  - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Programs** → **Turn Windows features on or off**.
  - b In the **Windows Features** dialog box, select the **LPR Port Monitor** check box under **Print and Document Services**.

In the command prompt, enter the lpr command as described in the following example:

Example: Printing "event.pdf" when the printer's IP address is 192.168.1.100.

```
C:\> lpr -S 192.168.1.100 -P lp event.pdf
```

## Using the ftp command

In the command prompt, enter the ftp command as described in the following example:

Example: Printing "event.pdf" when the printer's IP address is 192.168.1.100.

```
C:\> ftp 192.168.1.100
Connected to 192.168.1.100.
220 FUJI XEROX DocuPrint XXXX
User (192.168.1.100:(none)):
331 Password required
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> bin
200 Command successful
ftp> put event.pdf
200 Command successful
150 Opening data connection
226 Transfer complete
ftp: xxxxx bytes sent in xxxSeconds xxxxxkbytes/sec.
ftp>
```

## ■ Duplex Printing

Duplex printing (or 2-sided printing) allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. A4, A5, B5, Letter, Folio, Legal and Executive paper sizes are acceptable.

This section includes:

- ["Using 2-Sided Print" on page 135](#)
- ["Using Booklet Print" on page 136](#)

### Using 2-Sided Print

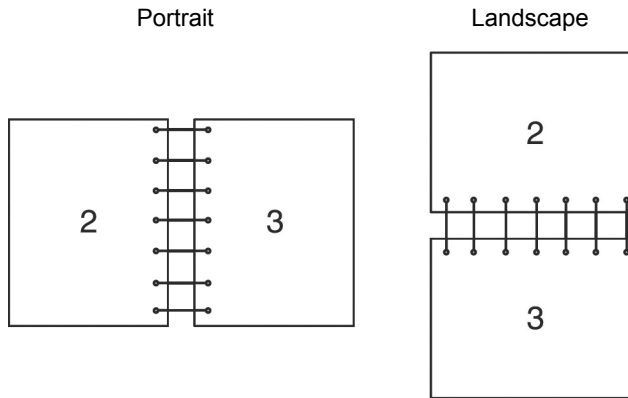
The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

- 1** Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).  
Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server 2003).  
Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).  
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista).  
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).  
On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 8).  
On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows Server 2012).  
A list of available printers appears.
- 2** Right-click the printer and select **Printing preferences**.  
The **Paper/Output** tab appears.
- 3** From the drop-down menu of **Paper**, select **Select By Tray** and then select **Automatically Select, Tray 1**, **Tray 2**, or **Bypass Tray**.

**4** From **2-Sided Print**, select **2-Sided Print** or **2-Sided Print, Flip on Short Edge**.

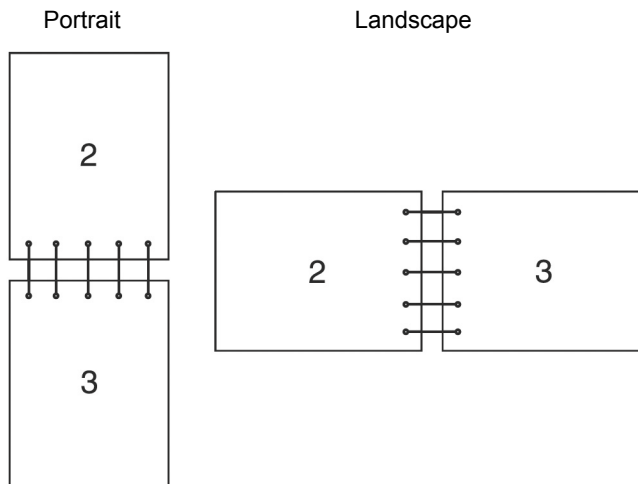
---

**2-Sided Print** Assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows long-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:



---

**2-Sided Print, Flip on Short Edge** Assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows short-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:



---

**5** Click **OK**.

## Using Booklet Print

To use the Booklet Print feature, select the **Booklet Layout** check box in the **Layout/Watermark** tab of the printer's **Printing Preferences** dialog box. Click **Booklet Creation** for detailed settings. The binding position is automatically set to **2-Sided Print** for the **2-Sided Print** in the **Paper/Output** tab.

**NOTE:**

- When the XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver or PS driver is used, the Booklet Print feature is not available.
- For details on the **2-Sided Print** option, see ["2-Sided Print" on page 136](#).

## ■ Selecting Printing Options

This section includes:

- "Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows)" on page 137
- "Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Windows)" on page 137
- "Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Mac OS X)" on page 139

### Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows)

Printing Preferences control all of your print jobs, unless you override them specifically for a job. For example, if you want to use duplex printing for most jobs, set this option in Printing Preferences.

To select Printing Preferences:

- 1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).  
Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server 2003).  
Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).  
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista).  
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).  
On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 8).  
On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows Server 2012).

A list of available printers appears.

- 2 Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Printing preferences**.  
The printer's **Printing Preferences** screen appears.
- 3 Make selections on the driver tabs, and then click **OK** to save your selections.

#### NOTE:

- For more information about Windows print driver options, click **Help** on the print driver tab to view the help.

### Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Windows)

If you want to use special printing options for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer. For example, if you want to use Photo print-quality mode for a particular graphic, select this setting in the driver before printing that job.

- 1 With the desired document or graphic open in your application, access the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences** to open the print driver.
- 3 Make selections on the driver tabs.

#### NOTE:

- When using the PCL 6 or PS driver, you can save current printing options with a distinctive name and apply them to other print jobs. Select either the **Paper/Output**, **Image Options**, **Color Options**, **Layout/Watermark**, or **Advanced** tab, and then click **Save** under **Saved Settings** on the **Paper/Output** tab. Click **Help** for more information.
- 4 Click **OK** to save your selections.
  - 5 Print the job.

See the following table for specific printing options:

The table shown below uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

## Printing Options for Windows

Driver Tab	Printing Options
<b>Paper/Output tab</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Job Type</li> <li>• 2-Sided Print</li> <li>• Paper               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Size</li> <li>– Type</li> <li>– Select By Tray</li> <li>– Advanced Paper Selection</li> <li>– Covers/Separators</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Output</li> <li>• Output Color</li> <li>• Saved Settings</li> <li>• Envelope/Paper Setup Wizard</li> <li>• Status</li> <li>• Defaults</li> <li>• Default All</li> </ul>
<b>Image Options tab</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Toner Saver</li> <li>• Application Reduce/Enlarge</li> <li>• Image Shift Summary</li> <li>• Defaults</li> </ul>
<b>Color Options tab</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Output Color</li> <li>• Output Recognition</li> <li>• Image Quality</li> <li>• Image Adjustment Mode</li> <li>• Image Types</li> <li>• Image Auto Correction</li> <li>• Image Settings</li> <li>• Color Balance</li> <li>• Profile Settings</li> <li>• Defaults</li> </ul>
<b>Layout/Watermark tab</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Page Layout               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)</li> <li>– Poster</li> <li>– Booklet Layout</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Page Layout Options</li> <li>• Background Form</li> <li>• Watermark</li> <li>• Annotation</li> <li>• Defaults</li> </ul>
<b>Advanced tab</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advanced Settings               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Document Options                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Specify Font</li> <li>– Paper/Output</li> <li>– Image Options</li> <li>– Layout/Watermark</li> <li>– Others</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• About</li> <li>• Defaults</li> </ul>

# Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Mac OS X)

To select print settings for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer.

- 1 With the document open in your application, click **File**, and then click **Print**.
- 2 Select your printer from **Printer**.
- 3 Select the desired printing options from the menus and drop-down list boxes that are displayed.

**NOTE:**

- In Mac OS® X, click **Save As** on the **Presets** menu to save the current printer settings. You can create multiple presets and save each with its own distinctive name and printer settings. To print jobs using specific printer settings, click the applicable saved preset in the **Presets** menu.

- 4 Click **Print** to print the job.

Mac OS X Print Driver Printing Options:

The table shown below uses Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

## Printing options for Mac OS X

Item	Printing Options
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Copies</li><li>• Collated</li><li>• Two-Sided</li><li>• Pages</li><li>• Paper Size</li><li>• Orientation</li></ul>
Layout	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Pages per Sheet</li><li>• Layout Direction</li><li>• Border</li><li>• Two-Sided</li><li>• Reverse page orientation</li><li>• Flip horizontally</li></ul>
Color Matching	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ColorSync<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Profile</li></ul></li><li>• In printer</li></ul>
Paper Handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Pages to Print</li><li>• Page Order</li><li>• Scale to fit paper size</li><li>• Destination Paper Size</li><li>• Scale down only</li></ul>
Paper Feed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All pages From</li><li>• First Page From</li><li>• Remaining From</li></ul>
Cover Page	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Print Cover Page</li><li>• Cover Page Type</li><li>• Billing Info</li></ul>
Scheduler	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Print Document</li><li>• Priority</li></ul>
Job Accounting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Account Mode</li><li>• User Details Setup</li></ul>
Job Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Job Type</li><li>• Setup</li><li>• Defaults</li></ul>

Item	Printing Options
Image Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Output Color</li> <li>• Image Quality</li> <li>• Brightness</li> <li>• Basic Features/Advanced Features</li> <li>• Image Type</li> <li>• Image Adjustment</li> <li>• Screen</li> <li>• Color Balance</li> <li>• Defaults</li> </ul>
Watermark	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Watermark <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Edit</li> <li>– Delete</li> <li>– New</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Print on Page 1 only</li> <li>• Defaults</li> </ul>
Printer Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Feature Sets: General <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Gray Guaranteed</li> <li>– Feed Orientation</li> <li>– Paper Type</li> <li>– Substitute Tray</li> <li>– Custom Paper Auto Orientation</li> <li>– Image Enhancement</li> <li>– Draft Mode</li> <li>– Skip Blank Pages</li> <li>– Halftone Screen Lock</li> <li>– High speed for monochrome documents</li> <li>– Trapping</li> <li>– Letterhead Duplex Mode</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Summary	

## ■ Printing Custom Size Paper

This section explains how to print on custom size paper using the print driver.

The way to load custom size paper is the same as the one to load standard size paper.

### NOTE:

- You can use custom size paper between the following ranges:
  - For the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder
    - Width: 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
    - Length: 127 mm (5 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)
  - For the bypass tray
    - Width: 76.2 mm (3 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
    - Length: 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)
- XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver does not support custom size paper.

### See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 121](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray" on page 124](#)
- ["Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 128](#)



# Defining Custom Paper Sizes

Before printing, set the custom size on the print driver.

## NOTE:

- When setting the paper size on the print driver and the operator panel, be sure to specify the same size as the actual print media used. Setting the wrong size for printing can cause printer failure. This is especially true if you configure a bigger size when using a narrow width paper.

## • Using the Windows Print Driver

On the Windows print driver, set the custom size in the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box. This section explains the procedure using Windows 7 and the PCL 6 driver as an example.

An administrator's password only allows users with administrator rights to change the settings. Users without the rights of administrator can only view the contents.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
- 3 Select the **Device Settings** tab.
- 4 Select **Custom Paper Size** and click **Setup**.
- 5 Select the **Create a New Form** check box.
- 6 Enter a name for the custom paper size in **Name**. Up to 31 characters can be used for the paper name.
- 7 Specify the values for **Width** and **Length** either by entering the number directly or using the up arrow and down arrow buttons.

The value for **Width** cannot be greater than that of **Length**, even if it is within the specified range.

## NOTE:

- You can switch the units by selecting either **Millimeters** or **Inches** under **Units**.
- If you do not want to share the custom paper size with other users, clear the **Share it with Other Users** check box.

- 8 Click **Save**.
- 9 If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 8 to define another custom size.
- 10 Click **Close**.
- 11 Click **OK**.

# Printing on Custom Size Paper

Use the following procedures to print using either the Windows or Mac OS X print drivers.

## • Using the Windows Print Driver

To print on custom size paper using the PCL 6 driver as an example:

### NOTE:

- The way to display the printer **Properties/Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of each application software.

- 1 From the application menu, select **Print**.
- 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences**.
- 3 Select the **Paper/Output** tab.
- 4 From the drop-down menu of **Paper**, select **Advanced Paper Selection**.
- 5 Select the desired paper tray from **Paper Tray**.

### NOTE:

- If you select **Bypass Tray**, **Bypass Feed Orientation** appears. Specify the orientation of the paper set on the bypass tray.

- 6 Select the size of the original document from **Original Document Size**.
- 7 Specify **Scale Options**.

If you select the custom paper size from **Original Document Size** in step 6, select **No Scaling** and go to step 9.

If you select the standard paper size from **Original Document Size** in step 6, select **Automatically Scale** and go to step 8.

- 8 Select the custom paper size from **Output Paper Size**.
- 9 Select the appropriate paper type from **Paper Type**.
- 10 Click **OK** twice.
- 11 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

## • Using the Mac OS X Print Driver

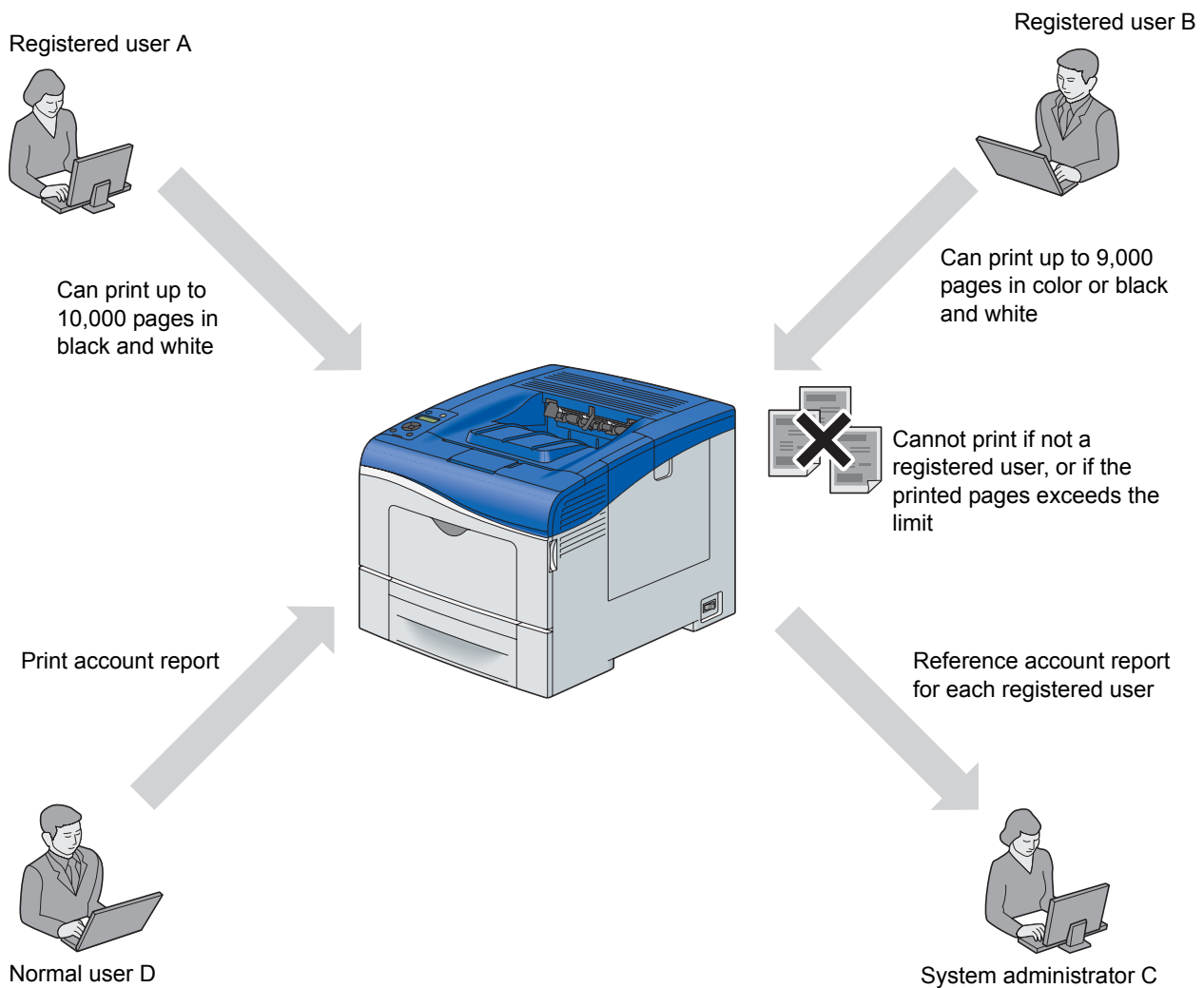
This section explains the procedure using Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Page Setup**.
- 2 Select your printer from **Format For**.
- 3 From **Paper Size**, select **Manage Custom Sizes**.
- 4 In the **Custom Paper Sizes** window, click **+**.  
A newly created setting "Untitled" is displayed in the list.
- 5 Double-click "Untitled" and enter the name for the setting.
- 6 Enter the size of the original document in the **Width** and **Height** boxes of **Paper Size**.
- 7 Specify **Non-Printable Area** if necessary.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Make sure that the newly created paper size is chosen in **Paper Size**, and then click **OK**.
- 10 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 11 Make sure that your printer is selected in **Printer**.
- 12 Click **Print** to start printing.

## ■ Auditron

Auditron contains an authentication function that can set limits on what processes can be used, as well as an account management that can be used to control usage based on authentication.

The following illustration shows how the printer works with Auditron.



### NOTE:


- You can configure the printer's Auditron settings with CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online Help of CentreWare Internet Services.
- To print using Auditron, you need to set the print driver. For more information, refer to the Help of the driver.

## ■ Checking Status of Print Data

This section includes:

- ["Checking Status \(Windows Only\)" on page 145](#)
- ["Checking Status in CentreWare Internet Services \(Windows & Mac OS X\)" on page 145](#)

### Checking Status (Windows Only)

Printer information and status can be checked with SimpleMonitor. By default, the **Status Monitor** window launches when printing and an error occurs. To display the **Status Monitor** window manually, double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon  on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. From the displayed window, click the name of the desired printer listed.

For more information about SimpleMonitor, see Help: The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs**.
- 2 Select **Fuji Xerox**.
- 3 Select **SimpleMonitor for Asia-Pacific**.
- 4 Select **SimpleMonitor Help**.

**See also:**

- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 62](#)

### Checking Status in CentreWare Internet Services (Windows & Mac OS X)

You can check the status of the print job sent to the printer at the **Jobs** tab of CentreWare Internet Services.

**See also:**

- ["Printer Management Software" on page 59](#)

## ■ Printing With AirPrint



This section provides information for printing with AirPrint. AirPrint allows you to print through a network with iPad (all models), iPhone (3GS or later), and iPod touch (3rd generation or later) running the latest version of iOS. AirPrint also allows you to accomplish basic network printing with Macintosh (Mac OS X 10.7 or later) without installing additional drivers.

### Setting Up AirPrint on Your Printer

To use AirPrint, Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP protocols are required on your printer. Make sure that Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP are set to Enable on the operator panel menu. For details, see ["Protocol" on page 177](#). Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP can also be enabled by clicking **Turn on AirPrint** from the **CentreWare Internet Services**. Follow the procedure below to configure the environment settings for AirPrint from the **CentreWare Internet Services**.


- 1 Ensure that the printer is connected to the network.
- 2 Launch the **CentreWare Internet Services** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.
- 3 When the **CentreWare Internet Services** opens, go to the page of **AirPrint** in **Protocol Settings** under the **Properties** tab. Click **Turn on AirPrint** in **Enable AirPrint**. The printer is ready for AirPrint.

**NOTE:**


- If the **Turn on AirPrint** button is not active, it means that both Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP are already set to Enable on the operator panel menu and the printer is ready for AirPrint.

## Printing via AirPrint

The following procedure uses the iPhone running iOS 5 as an example.

- 1 Open your email, photo, web page, or document you want to print.
- 2 Tap the action icon .
- 3 Tap **Print**.
- 4 Select your printer and set printer options.
- 5 Tap **Print**.

### NOTE:

- To cancel the printing job, double click the **Home** button, tap the **Print Center** icon . If there are more than one job in the queue, select the job you want to cancel, then tap **Cancel Printing**.

## ■ Printing a Report Page




You can print a various types of reports and lists. For details on each report and list, see ["Report / List" on page 164](#). Taking the Printer Settings page as an example, this section describes how to print a report page.

## Printing a Printer Settings Page

To verify detailed printer settings, print a Printer Settings page. A printed Printer Settings page also allows you to verify whether or not options have been installed properly.

### See also:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 164](#)

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Printer Settings`, and then press the  button.  
The printer settings page is printed.

## ■ Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first browse through the menus from the operator panel, you see some values marked with an asterisk (\*). These values are the factory default and original system settings.




### NOTE:

- Factory defaults may vary for different regions.




When you select a new value from the operator panel, the value selected is marked with an asterisk (\*) to identify it as the current user setting.


These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select the desired menu, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired menu or menu item, and then press the  button.
  - If the selection is a menu, the menu is opened and the first menu item in the menu appears.
  - If the selection is a menu item, the current user setting for the menu item appears with an asterisk (\*).

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
  - A numerical value that can be changed
  - An On or Off setting
- 4 Select the desired value, and then press the  button.
  - 5 Press the  (**Back**) or  button to return to the previous menu.

To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. To quit setting new values, press the  (**Back**) button.

Driver settings may have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel.

# Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD)

---

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the new Microsoft protocol for Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, and Windows Server 2012.

## NOTE:

- WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

This section includes:

- ["Adding Roles of Print Services" on page 148](#)
- ["Printer Setup" on page 149](#)

## ■ Adding Roles of Print Services

When you use Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 client.

### • For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.
- 3 Select the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

### • For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.
- 3 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

### • For Windows Server 2012:

- 1 Click **Server Manager** of the start screen.
- 2 Select **Add Roles and Features** from the **Manage** menu.
- 3 Click **Next** on the **Before You Begin** window → Select installation type on the **Installation Type** window → Select destination server on the **Server Selection** window in the **Add Roles and Features Wizard**.
- 4 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Select features on the **Features** window → Confirm installation selections on the **Confirmation** window.
- 6 Click **Install**.



## ■ Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Driver CD Kit* that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft Windows' **Add Printer** wizard. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

### Installing a Print Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (**Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012

On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.

- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

#### NOTE:

- In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws/**.
- If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below.  
For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.
  - 1 Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
  - 2 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
  - 3 Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
  - 4 Enter the printer's IP address in **Hostname or IP address** and click **Next**.
- Before installing the driver using the **Add Printer** wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the following:
  - Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
  - Add the print driver to your computer.

- 5 If prompted, install the print driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, enter the password or provide confirmation.
- 6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.
- 7 Configure the option settings and print a test page to verify print installation.
  - a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (**Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).  
For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012  
On the Windows desktop, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
  - b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Printer properties** (**Properties** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).  
On the **Configuration** tab, click **Installable Options** to configure the option settings, and then click **Apply**.
  - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

# Using Digital Certificates

---

The authentication feature using digital certificates upgrades security when sending print data or setting data. This section describes how to manage digital certificates.

## NOTE:

- For information about digital certificate error, see ["Understanding Printer Messages" on page 242](#) and ["Digital Certificate Problem" on page 239](#).

The following is a typical setup flow for using digital certificates.

Prepare to manage digital certificates.

- Change the Encryption Setting of the hard disk unit
- Set HTTPS Communication



Import and set digital certificates.

- Import a Digital Certificate
- Set a Digital Certificate
- Confirm the Settings of a Digital Certificate



Set various security features using digital certificates.

## ■ Managing Certificates

This section describes how to manage digital certificates.

This section includes:

- ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#)
- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)
- ["Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 153](#)
- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)
- ["Deleting a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)
- ["Exporting a Digital Certificate" on page 155](#)

## NOTE:

- The external certificate management described in this section is enabled only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

## Preparing to Manage Certificates

Before managing digital certificates, the following settings must be applied.

- ["Changing the Encryption Setting of the Hard Disk Unit" on page 151](#)
- ["Setting HTTPS Communication" on page 151](#)

## • Changing the Encryption Setting of the Hard Disk Unit












Some items are effective only when encryption of the optional hard disk unit is set to On. Change the encryption setting to On and set a key that is required to encrypt from the operator panel, if necessary.

### IMPORTANT:

- All files stored on the optional hard disk unit are cleared when changing the encryption setting.

### NOTE:

- You can enter only characters from 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, and NULL values for encryption key.

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Data Encryption`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Encryption`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `On`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Enter the passphrase for the encryption key using the  and  buttons, and then press the  button.
- 8 The `Initialize HDD Are You Sure?` message appears.  
When you confirm that all stored documents will be deleted to change the encryption setting, press the  button to change the setting.  
When you quit changing encryption setting, press the  button.

## • Setting HTTPS Communication

Before managing certificates, set HTTPS communication with a self-signed certificate using CentreWare Internet Services.

### NOTE:

- Set HTTPS communication after changing the `Data Encryption` setting to On.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.  
The printer's web page appears.
- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- 5 Click **Generate Self-Signed Certificate of Machine Digital Certificate**.  
If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

### NOTE:

- The default user name is "11111", and the default password is "x-admin".  
The **Create New Certificate** page is displayed.

- 6 Select the public key method from the list of **Public Key Method**.
- 7 Select the size of public key from the list of **Public Key Size**.
- 8 Confirm the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.
- 9 Specify the validity period of the certificate in **Validity**.
- 10 Click **Generate Signed Certificate**.
- 11 When **Settings have been changed. Restart system for new settings to take effect.** is displayed, click **Restart Printer** to restart the printer.
- 12 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and press the **Enter** key.  
**NOTE:**
  - To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".  
Example: https://192.168.1.100/  
The printer's web page appears.
- 13 Repeat steps 3 to 4 to display the **SSL/TLS Server Communication** page.
- 14 Check that **Enabled** for **SSL/TLS Server Communication** is selected.

## Importing a Digital Certificate

### IMPORTANT:

- Before importing a certificate file, back up the certificate file.

### NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "[Preparing to Manage Certificates](#)" on page 150.
- Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer®.
- After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

### NOTE:

- To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".  
Example: https://192.168.1.100/  
The printer's web page appears.

- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- 5 Click **Upload Signed Certificate of Machine Digital Certificate**.  
The **Upload Signed Certificate** page is displayed.

### NOTE:

- The **Upload Signed Certificate** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and *Data Encryption* is set to On.

- 6 Enter a password corresponding to the certificate file to be imported.
- 7 Re-enter the password again to confirm it.
- 8 Click **Browse of File Name**, and select the file to be imported.
- 9 Click **Import** to import the certificate.

## Setting a Digital Certificate

### NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "[Preparing to Manage Certificates](#)" on page 150.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

### NOTE:

- To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".

Example: https://192.168.1.100/

The printer's web page appears.

- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- 5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

### NOTE:

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to On.

- 6 When setting a Wireless LAN (Server) certificate, select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**. When setting a certificate of SSL Server, SSL Client, IPsec, or Wireless LAN (Client), select **Local Device**.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- 8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

### NOTE:

- If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

- 9 Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.
- 10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
- 11 Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

# Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

## NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

## NOTE:

- To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".  
Example: https://192.168.1.100/  
The printer's web page appears.

- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- 5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

## NOTE:

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to On.

- 6 Select the category from the **Category** list.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- 8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

## NOTE:

- If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

- 9 The certificate displayed with an asterisk as **\*\*Valid** in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the purpose of use and actually used.

# Deleting a Digital Certificate

## NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

## NOTE:

- To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".  
Example: https://192.168.1.100/  
The printer's web page appears.

- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- 5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

## NOTE:

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to On.

- 6 Select the category from the **Category** list.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- 8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

**NOTE:**

- If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

- 9 Select the certificate to be deleted.
- 10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
- 11 To delete the selected certificate, click **Delete** at the upper-right corner.
- 12 Click **Delete**.

**NOTE:**

- When a certificate is deleted, the features associated with the deleted certificate are disabled. To delete a certificate being used, either disable the feature in advance or switch the association to another certificate, and then switch to another operation mode if possible before deleting the certificate.
  - For an SSL Server, switch to another certificate such as a self-signed certificate.
  - For an SSL Client, disable the LDAP-SSL/TLS and IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) feature.
  - For IPsec, change the IKE setting to Preshared Key or disable the feature.
  - For Wireless LAN, change the Wireless Security setting to other than WPA-Enterprise before deleting the certificate.

## Exporting a Digital Certificate

**NOTE:**

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "[Preparing to Manage Certificates](#)" on page 150.
- Since the secret key is not exported, an imported PKCS#12 format certificate can be exported only as a PKCS#7 certificate.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

**NOTE:**

- To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".  
Example: https://192.168.1.100/  
The printer's web page appears.

- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- 5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

**NOTE:**

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to On.

- 6 Select the category from the **Category** list.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- 8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

**NOTE:**

- If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

- 9 Select the certificate to be exported.
- 10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
- 11 To export the selected certificate, click **Export this certificate**.

## ■ Setting the Features

You can set various security features using digital certificates.

This section includes:

- ["Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode" on page 156](#)
- ["Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate \(HTTP/IPP\)" on page 157](#)
- ["Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" on page 157](#)
- ["Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" on page 158](#)
- ["Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" on page 158](#)
- ["Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise \(EAP-TLS\)" on page 159](#)
- ["Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise \(PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP\)" on page 160](#)

## Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode

### NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).

**1** Import the certificate to be used with IPsec.

#### See also:

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

**2** Set the certificate to be used with IPsec.

#### See also:

- ["Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 153](#)

**3** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly in IPsec.

#### See also:

- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)

**4** Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

**5** Click the **Properties** tab.

**6** In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **IP sec**.

**7** Select the **Enabled** check box for **Protocol**.

**8** Select **Digital Signature** from the **IKE Authentication Method** list.

**9** Set each item, as necessary.

**10** Click **Apply**.

**11** After restarting the printer, IPsec communication using digital signatures is enabled. You can execute IPsec communication (Digital Signature mode) between the printer and the network device (such as computer) on which the certificate and IPsec are set identically as on this device.



# Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)

## NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).

**1** Import the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server.

### See also:

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

**2** Set the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server.

### See also:

- ["Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 153](#)

**3** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

### See also:

- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)

## NOTE:

- Confirm whether the newly set certificate, not the self-signed certificate, is associated.

**4** After restarting the printer, the certificate set as described above is used as the server certificate when executing communication with HTTP/IPP-SSL/TLS.

# Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

## NOTE:

- This setting is available only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to On.

**1** Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

**2** Click the **Properties** tab.

**3** In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

**4** Select the **Enabled** check box for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.

**5** Click **Apply**.

**6** After restarting the printer, **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication** is enabled.

## NOTE:

- When executing the certificate validity of the server and the presentation of the client certificate, see ["Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" on page 158](#) and ["Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" on page 158](#).

# Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

## NOTE:

- This setting is available only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.
- This feature is enabled only when the **Enabled** check box for **LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication** is selected.

**1** Import the root certificate (including intermediate certificate) for the LDAP server certificate.

### See also:

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

## NOTE:

- In the verification of a certificate of the connected server, to automatically search for an imported certificate and verify the path, the certificate does not need to be associated.

**2** Confirm whether the root certificate is correctly imported to the LDAP server.

### See also:

- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)

**3** Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

**4** Click the **Properties** tab.

**5** In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

**6** Select the **Enabled** check box for **Verify Remote Server Certificate**.

**7** Click **Apply**.

**8** After restarting the printer, the certificate presented by the LDAP server is verified when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication starts with the LDAP server.

## NOTE:

- When the result of verification is NG, communication is not established and an error results.

# Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

## NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to `On`, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).
- This feature is enabled only when the **Enabled** check box for **LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication** is selected.

**1** Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

### See also:

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

**2** Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

### See also:

- ["Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 153](#)

**3** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

### See also:

- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)

**4** After restarting the printer, the LDAP client certificate is presented when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication with the LDAP server starts. When the LDAP server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the LDAP server.

# Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)

## NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).
- WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.
- Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.
- After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

**1** Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

### See also:

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

**2** Set the digital certificate for Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

- a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.
- b Click the **Properties** tab.
- c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

## NOTE:

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to On.
- e Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.
- f Select **Wireless LAN (Server)** from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- g From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
- h Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.
- i Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.
- j Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
- k Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

**3** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

### See also:

- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)

**4** Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (client or client certificate).

### See also:

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

**5** Set the digital certificate for Wireless LAN (client or client certificate).

- a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.
- b Click the **Properties** tab.
- c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

## NOTE:

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to On.

- e Select **Local Device** within **Category**.
- f Select **Wireless LAN (Client)** from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- g From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
- h Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.
- i Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.
- j Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
- k Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

6 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

**See also:**

- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)

7 Set WPA-Enterprise for EAP-TLS.

- a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.
- b Click the **Properties** tab.
- c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Port Settings** and select **Wireless**.

**NOTE:**

- This setting is available only when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed.
- d Select either of the following from the **Encryption** list of **Security Settings**.
  - **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**
  - **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**

**NOTE:**

- **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES** or **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP** becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
  - Importing a Digital Certificate
  - Setting a Digital Certificate
  - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate
- e Set **EAP-Identity** of **WPA-Enterprise**.
- f Select **EAP-TLS** from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**.

8 Click **Apply**.

## Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)

**NOTE:**

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).
- WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.
- Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.
- After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

1 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

**See also:**

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

2 Set the digital certificate for Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

- a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.
- b Click the **Properties** tab.

- c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

**NOTE:**

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to **On**.

- e Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.
- f Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- g Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.
- h Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.
- i Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
- j Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

**3** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

- a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.
- b Click the **Properties** tab.
- c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

**NOTE:**

- The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and **Data Encryption** is set to **On**.

- e Select the category from the **Category** list.
- f Select **Wireless LAN (Server)** from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- g From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
- h Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.
- i The certificate displayed with an asterisk as **"\*Valid"** in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.

**4** Set WPA-Enterprise for PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, or EAP-TTLS CHAP.

- a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.
- b Click the **Properties** tab.
- c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Port Settings** and select **Wireless**.

**NOTE:**

- This setting is available only when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed.
- d Select either of the following from the **Encryption** list of **Security Settings**.
  - **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**
  - **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**

**NOTE:**

- **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES** or **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP** becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
  - Importing a Digital Certificate
  - Setting a Digital Certificate
  - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate
- e Set **EAP-Identity**, **Login Name**, and **Password** of **WPA-Enterprise**.
- f Select either of the following from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**:
  - **PEAPV0 MS-CHAPV2**
  - **EAP-TTLS PAP**
  - **EAP-TTLS CHAP**
- g Click **Apply**.

# Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)

## NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see ["Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 150](#).
- This feature is enabled only when Enable is set for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS).

**1** Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

### See also:

- ["Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 152](#)

**2** Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

### See also:

- ["Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 153](#)

**3** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

### See also:

- ["Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 154](#)

**4** After restarting the printer, the IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) certificate is presented when IEEE 802.1x communication with the RADIUS server starts. When the RADIUS server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the RADIUS server.

# Using the Operator Panel Menus

This chapter includes:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 164](#)
- ["Panel Lock Function" on page 196](#)
- ["Setting the Power Saver Time Option" on page 197](#)
- ["Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 198](#)

# Understanding the Printer Menus

---

When your printer is connected to a network and available to a number of users, the access to the `Admin Menu` can be limited. This prevents other users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change a user default that has been set by the administrator.

However, you can use your print driver to override user defaults and select settings for individual print jobs.

## ■ Report / List

Use the `Report / List` menu to print various types of reports and lists.

## Printer Settings

### Purpose:

To print a list of the current user default values, the installed options, the amount of installed print memory, and the status of printer supplies.

## Panel Settings

### Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

## PCL Fonts List

### Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

## PCL Macros List

### Purpose:

To print the information on the downloaded PCL macro.

## PS Fonts List

### Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PS fonts.

## PDF Fonts List

### Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PDF fonts.

## Job History

### Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the print jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

## Error History

### Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.



## Print Meter

**Purpose:**

To print the reports for the total number of pages printed.

## Demo Page

**Purpose:**

To print a page for testing colors.

## Stored Documents

**NOTE:**

- Stored Documents feature is available only when the optional 512MB memory is installed on the printer and `RAM Disk` under `System Settings` is enabled or when the hard disk unit is installed.

**Purpose:**

To print a list of all files stored for `Secure Print` and `Sample Print` in the RAM disk.

## ■ Meter Readings

**Purpose:**

To check the total number of printed pages.

**Values:**

<b>Meter 1</b>	Displays the total number of color prints.
<b>Meter 2</b>	Displays the total number of monochrome prints.
<b>Meter 3<sup>*1</sup></b>	Displays the total number of large size color prints.
<b>Meter 4</b>	Displays the total number of color and monochrome prints (Meter 1 + Meter 2).

<sup>\*1</sup> This item always shows 0 on your printer.

## ■ Admin Menu

Use the `Admin Menu` menu to configure a variety of printer features.

## PCL Settings

Use the `PCL Settings` menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

**NOTE:**

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### • Paper Tray

**Purpose:**

To specify the default paper tray.

**Values:**

<b>Auto<sup>*</sup></b>
<b>Bypass Tray</b>
<b>Tray1</b>
<b>Tray2<sup>*1</sup></b>

<sup>\*1</sup> Tray2 is available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.

## • Output Size

### Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

### Values:

#### mm series

<b>A4 - 210x297*<sup>1</sup></b>			
<b>B5 - 182x257</b>			
<b>A5 - 148x210</b>			
<b>Letter - 8.5x11</b>			
<b>Executive</b>			
<b>Folio - 8.5x13</b>			
<b>Legal - 8.5x14</b>			
<b>#10Env- 4.1x9.5</b>			
<b>Monarch Env.</b>			
<b>DL Env- 110x220</b>			
<b>C5 Env- 162x229</b>			
<b>New Custom Size</b>	<b>Portrait(Y)</b>	297 mm*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
		127 - 355 mm	
	<b>Landscape(X)</b>	210 mm*	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
		77 - 215 mm	

<sup>1</sup>The default for Output Size varies depending on region-specific factory.

#### inch series

<b>Letter - 8.5x11*<sup>1</sup></b>			
<b>Executive</b>			
<b>Folio - 8.5x13</b>			
<b>Legal - 8.5x14</b>			
<b>A4 - 210x297</b>			
<b>B5 - 182x257</b>			
<b>A5 - 148x210</b>			
<b>#10Env- 4.1x9.5</b>			
<b>Monarch Env.</b>			
<b>DL Env- 110x220</b>			
<b>C5 Env- 162x229</b>			
<b>New Custom Size</b>	<b>Portrait(Y)</b>	11.7"*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
		5.0-14.0"	
	<b>Landscape(X)</b>	8.3**	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
		3.0-8.5"	

<sup>1</sup>The default for Output Size varies depending on region-specific factory.

### NOTE:

- Selecting **New Custom Size** for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

## • Orientation

### Purpose:

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

### Values:

<b>Portrait*</b>	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
<b>Landscape</b>	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

## • 2-Sided

### Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

### Values:

<b>2-Sided Print</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	<b>On</b>	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper.
<b>Binding Edge</b>	<b>Long Edge Flip*</b>	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	<b>Short Edge Flip</b>	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

## • Font

### Purpose:

To specify the default font from the fonts registered in the printer.

### Values:

<b>CG Times</b>	<b>LetterGothic</b>	<b>CourierPS</b>
<b>CG Times It</b>	<b>LetterGothic It</b>	<b>CourierPS Ob</b>
<b>CG Times Bd</b>	<b>LetterGothic Bd</b>	<b>CourierPS Bd</b>
<b>CG Times BdIt</b>	<b>Albertus Md</b>	<b>CourierPS BdOb</b>
<b>Univers Md</b>	<b>Albertus XBd</b>	<b>SymbolPS</b>
<b>Univers MdIt</b>	<b>Clarendon Cd</b>	<b>Palatino Roman</b>
<b>Univers Bd</b>	<b>Coronet</b>	<b>Palatino It</b>
<b>Univers BdIt</b>	<b>Marigold</b>	<b>Palatino Bd</b>
<b>Univers MdCd</b>	<b>Arial</b>	<b>Palatino BdIt</b>
<b>Univers MdCdIt</b>	<b>Arial It</b>	<b>ITCBookman Lt</b>
<b>Univers BdCd</b>	<b>Arial Bd</b>	<b>ITCBookman LtIt</b>
<b>Univers BdCdIt</b>	<b>Arial BdIt</b>	<b>ITCBookmanDm</b>
<b>AntiqueOlv</b>	<b>Times New</b>	<b>ITCBookmanDm It</b>
<b>AntiqueOlv It</b>	<b>Times New It</b>	<b>HelveticaNr</b>
<b>AntiqueOlv Bd</b>	<b>Times New Bd</b>	<b>HelveticaNr Ob</b>
<b>CG Omega</b>	<b>Times New BdIt</b>	<b>HelveticaNr Bd</b>
<b>CG Omega It</b>	<b>Symbol</b>	<b>HelveticaNrBdOb</b>
<b>CG Omega Bd</b>	<b>Wingdings</b>	<b>N C Schbk Roman</b>
<b>CG Omega BdIt</b>	<b>Line Printer</b>	<b>N C Schbk It</b>
<b>GaramondAntiqua</b>	<b>Times Roman</b>	<b>N C Schbk Bd</b>
<b>Garamond Krsv</b>	<b>Times It</b>	<b>N C Schbk BdIt</b>
<b>Garamond Hlb</b>	<b>Times Bd</b>	<b>ITC A G Go Bk</b>
<b>GaramondKrsvHlb</b>	<b>Times BdIt</b>	<b>ITC A G Go BkOb</b>
<b>Courier*</b>	<b>Helvetica</b>	<b>ITC A G Go Dm</b>
<b>Courier It</b>	<b>Helvetica Ob</b>	<b>ITC A G Go DmOb</b>
<b>Courier Bd</b>	<b>Helvetica Bd</b>	<b>ZapfC MdIt</b>
<b>Courier BdIt</b>	<b>Helvetica BdOb</b>	<b>ZapfDingbats</b>

## • Symbol Set

### Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

### Values:

ROMAN-8*	WIN L1	ISO-6
ISO L1	WIN L2	ISO-11
ISO L2	WIN L5	ISO-15
ISO L5	DESKTOP	ISO-17
ISO L6	PS TEXT	ISO-21
PC-8	MC TEXT	ISO-60
PC-8 DN	MS PUB	ISO-69
PC-775	MATH-8	WIN 3.0
PC-850	PS MATH	WINBALT
PC-852	PI FONT	SYMBOL
PC-1004	LEGAL	WINGDINGS
PC-8 TK	ISO-4	DNGBTSMS

## • Font Size

### Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts, within the range of 4.00 to 50.00. The default is 12.00. Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

### NOTE:

- The `Font Size` menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

## • Font Pitch

### Purpose:

To specify the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts, within the range of 6.00 to 24.00. The default is 10.00. Font pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For nonscheduled mono spaced fonts, the pitch is displayed, but cannot be changed.

### NOTE:

- The `Font Pitch` menu is only displayed for fixed or mono spaced fonts.

## • Form Line

### Purpose:

To set the number of lines in a page.

### Values:

<b>64<sup>*1</sup> (mm series)/60<sup>*1</sup> (inch series)</b>	Sets the value in increments of 1.
<b>5–128</b>	

<sup>\*1</sup>Denotes region-specific factory default values.

The printer sets the amount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the `Form Line` and `Orientation` menu items. Select the correct `Form Line` and `Orientation` before changing `Form Line`.

### See also:

- "[Orientation](#)" on page 167

## • Quantity

### Purpose:

To set the default print quantity, within the range of 1 to 999. The default is 1. (Set the number of copies required for a specific job from the print driver. Values selected from the print driver always override values selected from the operator panel.)

## • Image Enhance

### Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the Image Enhance feature, which makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

### Values:

Off	Disables the Image Enhance feature.
On*	Enables the Image Enhance feature.

## • Hex Dump

### Purpose:

To help isolate the source of a print job problem. With `Hex Dump` selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.

### Values:

Disable*	Disables the Hex Dump feature.
Enable	Enables the Hex Dump feature.

## • Draft Mode

### Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when you print in the draft mode.

### Values:

Disable*	Does not print in the draft mode.
Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

## • LineTermination

### Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

### Values:

Off*	The line termination command is not added. CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added. CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added. CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-LF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added. CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-LF

## • Output Color

### Purpose:

To specify the color mode to Color or Black and White. This setting is used for a print job that does not specify a print mode.

### Values:

<b>Black and White*</b>	Prints in the black and white mode.
<b>Color</b>	Prints in the color mode.

## • Ignore FormFeed

### Purpose:

To specify whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

### Values:

<b>Off*</b>	Disables the Ignore FormFeed feature.
<b>On</b>	Enables the Ignore FormFeed feature.

## PDF Settings

Use the **PDF Settings** menu to change printer settings that only affect the PDF jobs.

### NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## • Quantity

### Purpose:

To specify the number of copies to print.

### Values:

<b>1 sets*</b>	Sets the value in increments of 1.
<b>1-999</b>	

## • 2-Sided Print

### Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

### Values:

<b>1-Sided*</b>	Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
<b>Long Edge Flip</b>	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
<b>Short Edge Flip</b>	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

## • Print Mode

### Purpose:

To specify the print mode.

### Values:

<b>Normal*</b>	For documents with normal sized characters.
<b>High Quality</b>	For documents with small characters or thin lines, or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
<b>High Speed</b>	Prints with the higher speed than the Normal mode, but the quality is less.

## • Password

### Purpose:

To specify the password to print the secure PDF.

### Value:

Password	Enter the password to print the secure PDF.
----------	---

## • Collated

### Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

### Values:

On	Sorts the job.
Off*	Does not sort the job.

## • Output Size

### Purpose:

To specify the output paper size for PDF.

### Values:

A4 - 210x297mm* <sup>1</sup>
Letter - 8.5x11* <sup>1</sup>
Auto

\*<sup>1</sup> The default paper size is displayed.

## • Layout

### Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

### Values:

Auto %*
100% (No Zoom)
Booklet
2 Pages/Sheet
4 Pages/Sheet

## • Output Color

### Purpose:

To specify the output color.

### Values:

Color (Auto)*
Black and White

# PS Settings

Use the **PS Settings** menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript® emulation printer language.

## NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## • PS Error Report

### Purpose:

To specify whether to print the contents of PostScript errors.

The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>Off</b>	Discards the print job without printing an error message.
<b>On*</b>	Prints an error message before it discards the job.

## NOTE:

- Instructions from the PS driver override the settings specified on the operator panel.

## • PS Job Time-out

### Purpose:

To specify the runtime of one PostScript job. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>Off*</b>	Job time-out does not occur.
<b>On</b>	A PostScript error occurs if processing is not completed after the specified time.
	<b>1 min</b>
	<b>1-900 min</b>

## • Paper Select Mode

### Purpose:

To set the way to select the paper tray for PostScript mode. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>Auto*</b>	The tray is selected as the same setting as in the PCL mode.
<b>Select FromTray</b>	The tray is selected in a method compatible with regular PostScript printers.

## • Output Color

### Purpose:

To specify the color mode to Color or Black and White. This setting is used for a print job which does not specify a print mode.

### Values:

<b>Color*</b>	Prints in color mode.
<b>Black and White</b>	Prints in black and white mode.



# Network Setup

Use the **Network Setup** menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.

**NOTE:**

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## • Ethernet

**NOTE:**

- Ethernet feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wired network.

**Purpose:**

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

**Values:**

<b>Auto*</b>	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
<b>10BASE-T Half</b>	Uses 10BASE-T Half-duplex.
<b>10BASE-T Full</b>	Uses 10BASE-T Full-duplex.
<b>100BASE-TX Half</b>	Uses 100BASE-TX Half-duplex.
<b>100BASE-TX Full</b>	Uses 100BASE-TX Full-duplex.
<b>1000BASE-T Full</b>	Uses 1000BASE-T Full-duplex.

## • Wireless Status

**NOTE:**

- Wireless Status feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

**Purpose:**

To confirm the wireless communication status.

**Values:**

<b>Connection</b>	<b>Good</b>
	<b>Acceptable</b>
	<b>Low</b>
	<b>No Reception</b>
<b>Encryption Type</b>	<b>No Security</b>
	<b>WEP</b>
	<b>WPA-PSK-TKIP</b>
	<b>WPA2-PSK-AES</b>
	<b>Mixed mode PSK</b>
	<b>WPA-Enterprise-TKIP*</b>
	<b>WPA2-Enterprise-AES*</b>
	<b>Mixed mode Enterprise*</b>

\*The settings can be configured only on CWIS.

## • Wireless Setup

### NOTE:

- Wireless Setup is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

### Purpose:

To configure the wireless network using WPS.

### Values:

	<b>Select access</b>		Select the desired access point from the list, or select <b>Manual Setup</b> to specify and configure wireless network manually.
	<b>WEP Key</b>		Displayed when the selected access point uses the security method of WEP. Specify the WEP key of 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters. The transmit key is set to <b>Auto</b> .
	<b>PassPhrase Entry</b>		Displayed when the selected access point uses the security method of WPA-PSK-TKIP or WPA2-PSK-AES. Specify the pass phrase of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters.
<b>Manual Setup</b>	<b>Enter (SSID)</b>		Specify a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	<b>Network Mode</b>	<b>Infrastructure</b>	Select to configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.
	<b>Encryption Type</b>	<b>No Security</b>	Specify <b>No Security</b> to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from <b>Mixed mode PSK</b> , <b>WPA-PSK-TKIP</b> , <b>WPA2-PSK-AES</b> , and <b>WEP</b> .
		<b>Mixed mode PSK</b>	Specify <b>Mixed mode PSK</b> to automatically select an available encryption method from <b>WPA-PSK-TKIP</b> or <b>WPA2-PSK-AES</b> .

	<b>PassPhrase Entry</b>	Specify the pass phrase for Mixed mode PSK. Enter 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	<b>WPA-PSK-TKIP</b>	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-TKIP.
	<b>PassPhrase Entry</b>	Specify the pass phrase for WPA-PSK-TKIP. Enter 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	<b>WPA2-PSK-AES</b>	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA2-PSK-AES.
	<b>PassPhrase Entry</b>	Specify the pass phrase for WPA2-PSK-AES. Enter 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	<b>WEP</b>	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WEP.
	<b>WEP Key Entry</b>	Specify the WEP key to use through the wireless network. Enter 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters.
	<b>Transmit Key</b>	Specify the transmit key from Auto, WEP Key1, WEP Key2, WEP Key3, and WEP Key4.
<b>Ad-hoc</b>		Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.
	<b>Encryption Type</b>	<b>No Security</b> Specify No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method of WEP.
		<b>WEP</b> Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WEP
	<b>WEP Key Entry</b>	Specify the WEP key to use through the wireless network. Enter 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters.
	<b>Transmit Key</b>	Specify the transmit key from WEP Key1, WEP Key2, WEP Key3, and WEP Key4.

## • Reset Wireless

### NOTE:

- Reset Wireless feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

### Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

## • TCP/IP

### Purpose:

To configure the TCP/IP settings.

## IP Mode

### Purpose:

To configure IP Mode.

### Values:

<b>Dual Stack*</b>	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
<b>IPv4</b>	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
<b>IPv6</b>	Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.

## IPv4

### Purpose:

To configure IPv4 settings.

### Values:

<b>Get IP Address</b>	<b>DHCP / Autonet*</b>	Sets the IP address automatically. A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	<b>BOOTP</b>	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	<b>RARP</b>	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	<b>DHCP</b>	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	<b>Panel</b>	Use this option when you want to set the IP address manually on the operator panel.
<b>IP Address</b>		When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format <code>nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn</code> . Each octet that makes up <code>nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn</code> is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>		When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format <code>nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn</code> . Each octet that makes up <code>nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn</code> is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
<b>Gateway Address</b>		When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format <code>nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn</code> . Each octet that makes up <code>nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn</code> is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.

## • IPsec

### NOTE:

- IPsec feature is available only when IPsec is enabled on the CentreWare Internet Services.

### Purpose:

Disables IPsec.

## • Protocol

### Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>LPD</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables the LPD port.
<b>Port9100</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables the Port9100 port.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables the Port9100 port.
<b>FTP</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables FTP port.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables FTP port.
<b>IPP</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables IPP port.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables IPP port.
<b>SMB (TCP/IP)</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables SMB TCP/IP port.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables SMB TCP/IP port.
<b>SMB (NetBEUI)</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables SMB NetBEUI port.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables SMB NetBEUI port.
<b>WSD</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables WSD.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables WSD.
<b>SNMP (UDP/IP)</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables the SNMP (UDP/IP) port.
<b>StatusMessenger</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables the Status Messenger feature.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables the Status Messenger feature.
<b>InternetServices</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
<b>Bonjour(mDNS)</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables Bonjour® (mDNS).
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables Bonjour (mDNS).
<b>Telnet</b>	<b>Disable</b>	Disables Telnet.
	<b>Enable*</b>	Enables Telnet.
<b>HTTP-SSL/TLS*<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Disable*</b>	Disables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
	<b>Enable</b>	Enables HTTP-SSL/TLS.

<sup>1</sup> HTTP-SSL/TLS is available only when a certificate is created using CentreWare Internet Services. For details about creating a certificate, see the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

### NOTE:

- WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

## • IP Filter

### NOTE:

- IP Filter feature is available only when `Protocol` is set to `LPD` or `Port9100`.

### Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>n (n is 1-5)</b>	<b>Address</b>	Sets the IP address for Filter n.	
	<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Sets the address mask for Filter n.	
	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter n.
		<b>Accept</b>	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.
		<b>Reject</b>	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.

## • 802.1x

### NOTE:

- 802.1x feature is available only when the printer is connected using LAN cable and the 802.1x authentication is enabled using CentreWare Internet Services. For details about setting 802.1x, see the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

### Purpose:

To disable 802.1x authentication. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

<b>Disable</b>	Disables 802.1x.
----------------	------------------

## • Initialize NVM

### Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

## • Adobe Protocol

### Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for a parallel interface, you can configure the Adobe Protocol settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>Auto*</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol automatically.
<b>Standard</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>Standard</code> .
<b>BCP</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>BCP</code> .
<b>TBCP</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>TBCP</code> .
<b>Binary</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>Binary</code> .

## USB Settings

Use the `USB Settings` menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

### NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## • Port Status

### NOTE:

- Port Status feature is available only for the USB port on the rear of the printer.

### Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the USB port. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>Disable</b>	Disables the USB port.
<b>Enable*</b>	Enables the USB port.

## • Adobe Protocol

### Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol. You can configure the `Adobe Protocol` settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>Auto</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol automatically.
<b>Standard</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>Standard</code> .
<b>BCP</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>BCP</code> .
<b>TBCP*</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>TBCP</code> .
<b>Binary</b>	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to <code>Binary</code> .

## System Settings

Use `System Settings` to configure a variety of printer features.

### NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## • Power Saver Time

### Purpose:


To specify the time for transition to power saver mode.

### Values:

<b>Low Power Timer</b>	<b>1min*</b> 1–60 min	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Low Power mode after it finishes a job.
<b>Sleep Timer</b>	<b>4min*</b> 1–6 min	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it has entered Low Power mode.

When you specify 1 minute for `Low Power Timer`, the printer enters power saver mode 1 minute after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minute if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 1 and 60 minutes for `Low Power Timer` if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also change the status of the printer to the standby mode by pressing the  (**Wake UP**) button on the operator panel.

## • Auto Reset

### Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings to the default settings and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

### Values:

45sec*
1min
2min
3min
4min

## • Fault Time-out

### Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

### Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On*	60sec*	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	3–300 sec	

## • Job Time-out

### Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

### Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On*	30sec*	Sets the time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	5–300 sec	

## • Clock Settings

### Purpose:

To specify the date and time formats.

### Values:

Set Date & Time	Time Zone	Sets the time zone.
	Set Date	Sets the date depending on the Date Format settings.
	Set Time	Sets the time.
Date Format	yy/mm/dd	Sets the date format.
	mm/dd/yy	
	dd/mm/yy*	
Time Format	12H	Sets the time in 12-hour format.
	24H*	Sets the time in 24-hour format.

\*1The default for Date Format varies depending on region-specific factory default.



## • Audio Tones

### Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

### Values:

<b>Control Panel</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	<b>On</b>	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
<b>Invalid Key</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	<b>On</b>	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
<b>Machine Ready</b>	<b>Off</b>	Does not emit a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	<b>On*</b>	Emits a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
<b>Job Completed</b>	<b>Off</b>	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	<b>On*</b>	Emits a tone when a job is complete.
<b>Fault Tone</b>	<b>Off</b>	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	<b>On*</b>	Emits a tone when a job ends abnormally.
<b>Alert Tone</b>	<b>Off</b>	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	<b>On*</b>	Emits a tone when a problem occurs.
<b>Out of Paper</b>	<b>Off</b>	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	<b>On*</b>	Emits a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
<b>Low Toner Alert</b>	<b>Off</b>	Does not emit a tone when a toner is low.
	<b>On*</b>	Emits a tone when a toner is low.
<b>AutoClear Alert</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Does not emit a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	<b>On</b>	Emits a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
<b>All Tones</b>	<b>Off</b>	Disables all the alert tones.
	<b>On</b>	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.

## • mm / inch

### Purpose:

To specify the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

### Values:

<b>Millimeters (mm)*</b>	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
<b>Inches (")</b>	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.

### NOTE:

- The default for `mm/inch` varies depending on other settings, such as `Document Size`.

## • DefaultPaperSize

### Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

### Values:

<b>A4 - 210x297*</b>
<b>Letter - 8.5x11</b>

### NOTE:

- The default for `DefaultPaperSize` varies depending on region-specific factory default.

## • Auto Job History

### Purpose:

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

### Values:

<b>Off*</b>	Does not automatically print a job history report.
<b>On</b>	Automatically prints a job history report.

The job history report can also be printed using the `Report / List` menu.

## • 2-Sided Report

### Purpose:

To specify to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.

### Values:

<b>1-Sided*</b>	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.
<b>2-Sided</b>	Prints reports on both side of a sheet of paper.

## • Print ID

### Purpose:

To specify a location where the user ID is printed.

### Values:

<b>Off*</b>	Does not print the user ID.
<b>Top Left</b>	Prints the user ID on the top left of the page.
<b>Top Right</b>	Prints the user ID on the top right of the page.
<b>Bottom Left</b>	Prints the user ID on the bottom left of the page.
<b>Bottom Right</b>	Prints the user ID on the bottom right of the page.

### NOTE:

- When you print on DL size paper, a part of the user ID may not be printed correctly.

## • Print Text

### Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs PDL data, which is not supported by the printer, as text when the printer receives it. Text data is printed on A4 or Letter size paper.

### Values:

<b>Off</b>	Does not print the received data.
<b>On*</b>	Prints the received data as text data.

## • Banner Sheet

### NOTE:

- Banner Sheet feature is available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed on the printer.

### Purpose:

To specify the position of banner sheet, and also specify the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.

### Values:

<b>Insert Position</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Does not print the banner sheet.
	<b>Start Sheet</b>	Inserted before the first page of every job.
	<b>End Sheet</b>	Inserted after the last page of every job.
	<b>Start&amp;End Sheet</b>	Inserted before the first page of every job and after the last page of every job.
<b>Select Tray</b>	<b>Bypass Tray</b>	The banner sheet is loaded in the bypass tray.
	<b>Tray 1*</b>	The banner sheet is loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray.
	<b>Tray 2</b>	The banner sheet is loaded in the optional 550 sheet feeder.

## • RAM Disk

### NOTE:

- RAM Disk feature is available only when the 512MB Memory is installed on the printer.

### Purpose:

To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print and Sample Print features. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Values:

<b>Disable</b>		Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print and Sample Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
<b>Enable*</b>	<b>300MB*</b> <b>50-450MB</b>	Sets the allocation of memory to the RAM disk file system in increments of 50 MB.

### NOTE:

- Restart your printer when you change the settings for the RAM Disk menu.

## • Substitute Tray

### Purpose:

Specifies whether to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

### Values:

<b>Off*</b>	No tray size substitute accepted.
<b>Larger Size</b>	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
<b>Closest Size</b>	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
<b>Use Bypass Tray</b>	Substitutes paper from the bypass tray.

## • Auditor Mode

### Purpose:

To specify whether to limit the functions that can be used per user by Auditor authentication.

### Values:

<b>Off*</b>	Does not limit functions by Auditor authentication.
<b>On</b>	Limits functions by Auditor authentication.

## • No Acct User Prt

### Purpose:

To specify whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.

### Values:

<b>Off*</b>	Does not permit non-account user to print the data.
<b>On</b>	Permits non-account user to print the data.

## • LetterH Dup Mode

### Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides when you use letterhead.

### Values:

<b>Disable*</b>	Does not print on both sides of letterhead.
<b>Enable</b>	Prints on both sides of letterhead.

## • Low Toner Msg

### Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

### Values:

<b>Off</b>	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
<b>On*</b>	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

## • FW Download Mode

### Purpose:

To enable or disable download of firmware updates.

### Values:

<b>Enable*</b>	Disables firmware updates.
<b>Disable</b>	Enables firmware updates.

## Maintenance Mode

Use the `Maintenance Mode` menu to initialize the NV (non-volatile) memory, configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

### NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## • F/W Version

### Purpose:

To confirm the current F/W version.

## • Adjust PaperType

### Purpose:

To specify paper density settings.

### Values:

Plain	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*
Labels	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*

## • Adjust Trans

### Purpose:

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing.)

### Values:

K Offset	0*	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
	-5 - 5	
YMC Offset	0*	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease the value.
	-5 - 5	

## • Adjust BTR

### Purpose:

To specify the transfer roller voltage adjustment for each paper type.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

### NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

### Values:

Plain	0*
	-5 to +10
Light Card	0*
	-5 to +10
Heavy Card	0*
	-5 to +10
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-5 to +10
HW Gloss Card	0*
	-5 to +10
Labels	0*
	-5 to +10
Envelope	0*
	-5 to +10

## • Adjust FusingUnit

### Purpose:

To adjust the fusing temperature setting for each paper type.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

### NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

### Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 to +3
Light Card	0*
	-3 to +3
Heavy Card	0*
	-3 to +3
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-5 to +10
HW Gloss Card	0*
	-5 to +10
Labels	0*
	-3 to +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 to +3

## • Auto Adjust Regi

### Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

### Values:

Off	Does not automatically perform color registration adjustment.
On*	Automatically performs color registration adjustment.

## • Adjust ColorRegi

### Purpose:


To manually perform color registration adjustment.

manual color registration adjustments are required when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

### NOTE:

- The Adjust ColorRegi feature can be configured when `Auto Adjust Regi` is set to `Off`.

### Values:

<b>Auto Adjust</b>	Automatically performs color registration correction.		
<b>ColorRegi Chart</b>	Prints a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values for lateral adjustment and process adjustment under <code>Enter Number</code> .		
<b>Enter Number</b>	<b>LY</b>	<b>-12 to +12</b>	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan. Enter a number in order of lateral adjustment (left), lateral adjustment (right), and process adjustment. Press the  button to save all the settings.
	<b>LM</b>		
	<b>LC</b>		
	<b>RY</b>	<b>-12 to +12</b>	
	<b>RM</b>		
	<b>RC</b>		
	<b>PY</b>	<b>-12 to +12</b>	
	<b>PM</b>		
	<b>PC</b>		

### NOTE:

- Ensure that you remove the paper from the bypass tray before performing `Auto Adjust`.

## • Initialize NVM

### Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their default values.

### See also:

- ["Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 198](#)

## • Init Print Meter

### Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to zero.

## • Reset Trans Unit

### Purpose:

To initialize the life counter of the transfer unit. After replacing the transfer unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

## • Clear JobHistory

### Purpose:

To clear the job history of all finished jobs.

## • Clear Storage

### NOTE:

- Clear Storage feature is available only when the optional 512MB memory is installed and `RAM Disk` is set to `Enable`, or when the hard disk unit is installed.

### Purpose:

To clear all files stored as Secure Print and Sample Print in the RAM disk.

### Values:

<b>All Clear</b>	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print and Sample Print in the RAM disk or the hard disk unit.
<b>Secure Document</b>	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk or the hard disk unit.
<b>Stored Document</b>	Deletes all files stored as Sample Print in the RAM disk or the hard disk unit.

## • Format HDD

### NOTE:

- Format HDD feature is available only when the hard disk unit is installed.

### Purpose:

To initialize the hard disk unit.

## • Non-Genuine

### Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

### NOTE:

- Using a non-Fuji Xerox toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Fuji Xerox toner cartridges.

### Values:

<b>Toner</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
	<b>On</b>	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

## • Adjust Altitude

### Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

### NOTE:

- An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to problems such as poor printing quality and incorrect indication of remaining toner.

### Values:

<b>0m*</b>	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
<b>1000m</b>	
<b>2000m</b>	
<b>3000m</b>	



# Secure Settings

Use the `Secure Settings` menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

**NOTE:**

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## • Panel Lock

**Purpose:**

To set a limited access to `Admin Menu` with a password, and to set or change the password.

**See also:**

- ["Panel Lock Function" on page 196](#)

**Values:**

<b>Panel Lock Set</b>	<b>Disable*</b>	Disables password protection for <code>Admin Menu</code> .
	<b>Enable</b>	Enables password protection for <code>Admin Menu</code> .
<b>Change Password*<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>0000–9999</b>	Sets or changes the password required to access <code>Admin Menu</code> .

<sup>1</sup>This item is available only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

## • Data Encryption

**Purpose:**

To disable or enable data encryption when using the printer.

**Values:**

<b>Encryption</b>	<b>Off*</b>	Disables encryption of the data.
	<b>On</b>	Enables encryption of the data.

## • HDD Over Write

**NOTE:**

- HDD Over Write feature is available only when the hard disk unit is installed.
- Overwrite of the hard disk may take several hours. When overwriting the hard disk, all functions of the printer are inoperable.

**Purpose:**

To erase the contents of the entire hard disk unit by overwriting the hard disk unit with meaningless data.

**Values:**

<b>Off*</b>	Disables overwrite of the hard disk unit.
<b>1 Time</b>	Overwrites the hard disk unit once.
<b>3 Times</b>	Overwrites the hard disk unit three times.

## • Login Error

### NOTE:

- Login Error feature is available only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

### Purpose:

To specify the number of error entry attempts allowed when you log in as an administrator in the Admin Menu and Report / List menu.

### Values:

Off*		Does not allow an administrator to log in after one error entry attempt.
On	5 times*	Sets the number of error entry attempts allowed when an administrator logs in.
	1-10	

## ■ Tray Settings

Use the Tray Settings menu to define the print media loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder.

### NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## Tray Settings

To configure tray settings.

## • Bypass Tray

### Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the bypass tray.

### Values:

mm series	<b>Paper Size</b>	<b>Driver Size*<sup>1</sup></b>			
		<b>A4 - 210x297</b>			
		<b>B5 - 182x257</b>			
		<b>A5 - 148x210</b>			
		<b>Letter - 8.5x11</b>			
		<b>Executive</b>			
		<b>Folio - 8.5x13</b>			
		<b>Legal - 8.5x14</b>			
		<b>#10Env- 4.1x9.5</b>			
		<b>Monarch Env.</b>			
		<b>DL Env- 110x220</b>			
		<b>C5 Env- 162x229</b>			
		<b>New Custom Size</b>	<b>Portrait(Y)</b>	297 mm* 127 - 355 mm	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			<b>Landscape(X)</b>	210 mm* 77 - 215 mm	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
	inch series	<b>Driver Size*<sup>1</sup></b>			
		<b>Letter - 8.5x11</b>			
		<b>Executive</b>			
<b>Folio - 8.5x13</b>					
<b>Legal - 8.5x14</b>					
<b>A4 - 210x297</b>					
<b>B5 - 182x257</b>					
<b>A5 - 148x210</b>					
<b>#10Env- 4.1x9.5</b>					
<b>Monarch Env.</b>					
<b>DL Env- 110x220</b>					
<b>C5 Env- 162x229</b>					
		<b>New Custom Size</b>	<b>Portrait(Y)</b>	11.7** 5.0-14.0"	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			<b>Landscape(X)</b>	8.3** 3.0-8.5"	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
<b>Paper Type</b>		<b>Plain*</b>			
		<b>Plain Thick</b>			
		<b>Other Type</b>			
	<b>Light Card</b>				
	<b>Heavy Card</b>				
	<b>LW gloss Card</b>				
	<b>HW gloss Card</b>				
	<b>Labels</b>				
	<b>Envelope</b>				
	<b>Letterhead</b>				
	<b>Hole Punched</b>				
	<b>Colored</b>				

<b>MPT mode</b>	<b>Panel Specified</b>	
	<b>DriverSpecified*</b>	
<b>Display Screen</b>	<b>Off</b>	Does not display a popup menu that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the bypass tray.
	<b>On*</b>	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the bypass tray.

\*1 The default for Paper Size varies depending on region-specific factory default.

**NOTE:**

- When MPT mode is set to DriverSpecified, Paper Size, Paper Type, and Display Screen are not available.
- For more information on supported paper sizes, see also "[Usable Print Media](#)" on page 116.

## • Tray1

### Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray.

mm series	<b>Paper Size</b>	<b>A4 - 210x297<sup>*1</sup></b>			
		<b>B5 - 182x257</b>			
		<b>A5 - 148x210</b>			
		<b>Letter - 8.5x11</b>			
		<b>Executive</b>			
		<b>Folio - 8.5x13</b>			
		<b>Legal - 8.5x14</b>			
		<b>New Custom Size</b>	<b>Portrait(Y)</b>	297 mm <sup>*</sup> 210 - 355 mm	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			<b>Landscape(X)</b>	210 mm <sup>*</sup> 148 - 215 mm	
	inch series		<b>Letter - 8.5x11<sup>*1</sup></b>		
		<b>Executive</b>			
		<b>Folio - 8.5x13</b>			
		<b>Legal - 8.5x14</b>			
		<b>A4 - 210x297</b>			
		<b>B5 - 182x257</b>			
		<b>A5 - 148x210</b>			
		<b>New Custom Size</b>	<b>Portrait(Y)</b>	11.7 <sup>**</sup> 8.3-14.0"	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			<b>Landscape(X)</b>	8.3 <sup>**</sup> 5.8-8.5"	
Paper Type			<b>Plain<sup>*</sup></b>		
		<b>Other Type</b>			
		<b>Light Card</b>			
		<b>Heavy Card</b>			
		<b>LW Gloss Card</b>			
		<b>HW Gloss Card</b>			
		<b>Letterhead</b>			
		<b>Hole Punched</b>			
		<b>Colored</b>			
Display Screen	<b>Off</b>	Does not display a popup menu that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray.			
	<b>On<sup>*</sup></b>	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray.			

<sup>\*1</sup> The default for Paper Size varies depending on region-specific factory default.

### NOTE:

- For more information on supported paper sizes, see also "[Usable Print Media](#)" on page 116.

## • Tray2

### NOTE:

- Tray2 is available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.

### Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the optional 550 sheet feeder.

<b>Paper Size</b>	<b>Auto</b>			
	<b>New Custom Size</b>	<b>Portrait(Y)</b>	297 mm* (11.7"*)	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			210 - 355 mm (8.3-14.0")	
		<b>Landscape(X)</b>	210 mm* (8.3"*)	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
		148 - 215 mm (5.8-8.5")		
<b>Paper Type</b>	<b>Plain*</b>			
	<b>Other Type</b>			
	<b>Light Card</b>			
	<b>Heavy Card</b>			
	<b>LW Gloss Card</b>			
	<b>HW Gloss Card</b>			
	<b>Letterhead</b>			
	<b>Hole Punched</b>			
	<b>Colored</b>			
<b>Display Screen</b>	<b>Off</b>		Does not display a popup menu that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the optional 550 sheet feeder.	
	<b>On*</b>		Displays a popup menu that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the optional 550 sheet feeder.	

### NOTE:

- For more information on supported paper sizes, see also "[Usable Print Media](#)" on page 116.

# Tray Priority

## Purpose:

To set the priority order of the paper trays for automatic tray selection. If paper trays loaded with the same paper size and type exists, the paper tray is selected according to this priority order.

## Values:

<b>1st Priority</b>	<b>Bypass Tray*</b>	Sets the bypass tray as the first priority.
	<b>Tray1</b>	Sets the standard 550 sheet tray as the first priority.
	<b>Tray2</b>	Sets the optional 550 sheet feeder as the first priority.
<b>2nd Priority</b>	<b>Bypass Tray</b>	Sets the bypass tray as second priority.
	<b>Tray1*</b>	Sets the standard 550 sheet tray as the second priority.
	<b>Tray2</b>	Sets the optional 550 sheet feeder as the second priority.
<b>3rd Priority</b>	<b>Bypass Tray</b>	Sets the bypass tray as the third priority.
	<b>Tray1</b>	Sets the standard 550 sheet tray as the third priority.
	<b>Tray2*</b>	Sets the optional 550 sheet feeder as the third priority.

## NOTE:

- **Tray2** and **3rd Priority** are available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.
- The paper tray name is not displayed in the priority menu after once selected.

# Panel Lock Function

---

This feature prevents unauthorized personnel from changing the settings made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the print driver.









This section includes:

- "Enabling the Panel Lock" on page 196
- "Disabling the Panel Lock" on page 196








## NOTE:

- Disabling the operator panel menus does not prevent access to the `Secure Print`, `Sample Print` and `Tray Settings` menus.









## ■ Enabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Panel Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Panel Lock Set`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Enable`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Enter the new password, and then press the  button.
- 8 Re-enter the password to confirm the password that you entered, and then press the  button.

## NOTE:

- The factory-default panel password is 0000.
- If you forget your password, turn off the printer. Then, while holding the  (**Menu**) button, turn on the printer. Continue to hold the  (**Menu**) button until the display indicates to enter the new password. Enter the new password, and then press the  button. Re-enter the password, and then press the  button. The display will briefly indicate the password has been initialized.
- If you change the password, perform steps 1 and 2. Enter the current password, and then press the  button. Perform steps 3 and 4. Select `Change Password`, and then press the  button. Enter the current password, and then press the  button. Perform steps 7 and 8. This will change the password.

## ■ Disabling the Panel Lock










- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Enter the password, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Panel Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Panel Lock Set`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select `Disable`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Enter the current password, and then press the  button.



# Setting the Power Saver Time Option

---






You can set the power saver time for the printer. The printer switches to the Power Saver mode after the specified time.

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Power Saver Time`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Low Power Timer` or `Sleep Timer`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value, and then press the  button.  
You can select from 1–60 minutes for `Low Power Timer` or 1–6 minutes for `Sleep Timer`.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Exit**) button.

# Resetting to Factory Defaults

---

After executing this function and rebooting the printer or all the menu parameters, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their default values.

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance Mode`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Initialize NVM`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Ensure that `Are You Sure?` appears, and then press the  button.  
The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

# Troubleshooting

This chapter includes:

- "Clearing Jams" on page 200
- "Basic Printer Problems" on page 215
- "Display Problems" on page 216
- "Printing Problems" on page 217
- "Print Quality Problems" on page 218
- "Noise" on page 234
- "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 235
- "Digital Certificate Problem" on page 239
- "Problems With Installed Optional Accessories" on page 240
- "Other Problems" on page 241
- "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 242
- "Contacting Service" on page 244
- "Getting Help" on page 245
- "Non-Genuine Mode" on page 246

# Clearing Jams

---

This section includes:

- ["Avoiding Jams" on page 200](#)
- ["Identifying the Location of Paper Jams" on page 201](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Bypass Tray" on page 202](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Standard 550 Sheet Tray" on page 204](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Fusing Unit" on page 206](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 209](#)
- ["Jam Problems" on page 211](#)

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams.

## See also:

- ["About Print Media" on page 114](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 116](#)

## NOTE:

- Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

## ■ Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media.
- See ["Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 121](#) and ["Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray" on page 124](#) to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the print media stack height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the load-line in the tray.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the bypass tray.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you load the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment.
- Do not remove the feeding tray during a print job.
- Push the tray in firmly after loading.
- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.
- Wipe the feed roller in the tray or bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water if jams caused by misfeeding paper occur frequently.

## See also:

- ["About Print Media" on page 114](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 116](#)
- ["Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 115](#)

## ■ Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

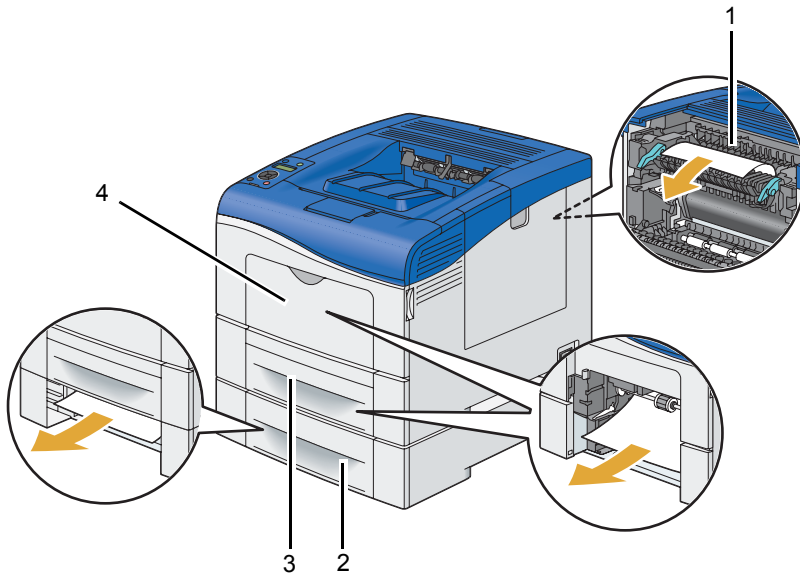
### CAUTION:

- Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

### IMPORTANT:

- Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1 | Fusing Unit               |
| 2 | Optional 550 Sheet Feeder |
| 3 | Standard 550 Sheet Tray   |
| 4 | Bypass Tray               |

# ■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Bypass Tray

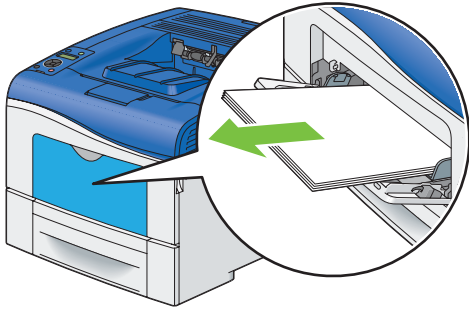
## IMPORTANT:

- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

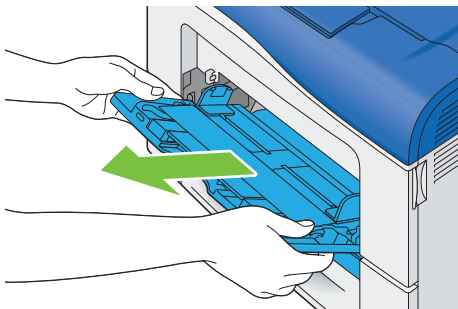
## NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

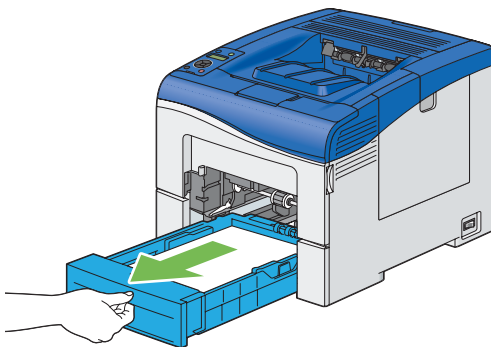
- 1 Remove the remaining documents from the bypass tray.



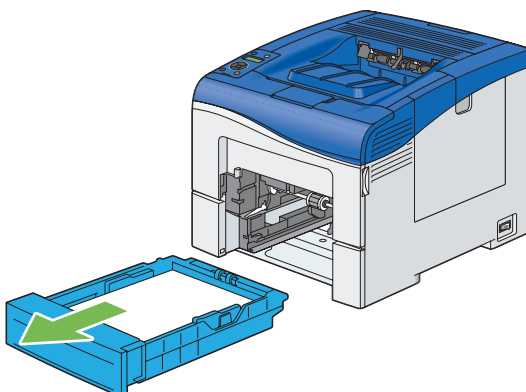
- 2 Grasp both sides of the bypass tray, and then pull the bypass tray from the printer.



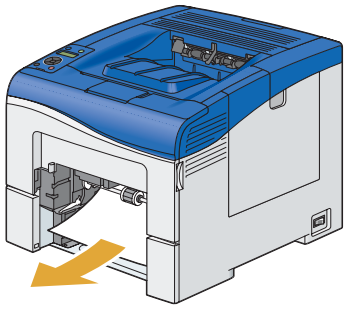
- 3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray from the printer about 200 mm.



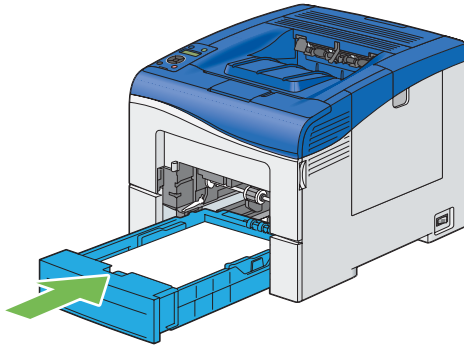
- 4 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



- 5 Remove the jammed paper.



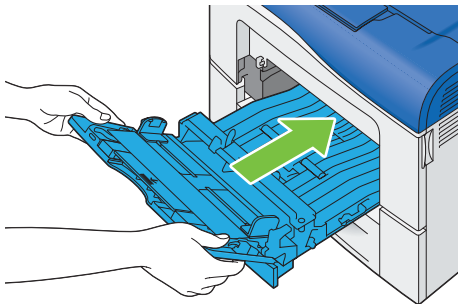
- 6 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



**IMPORTANT:**

- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

- 7 Insert the bypass tray into the printer, push until it stops, and close the cover.



# ■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Standard 550 Sheet Tray

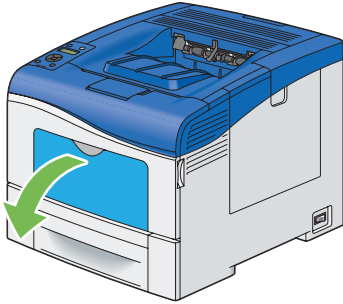
## IMPORTANT:

- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

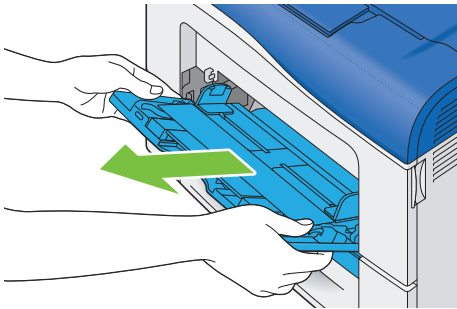
## NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

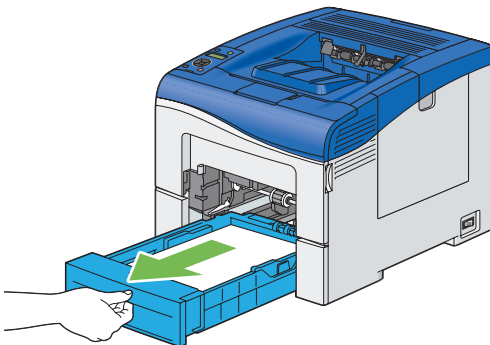
- 1 Open the bypass tray cover.



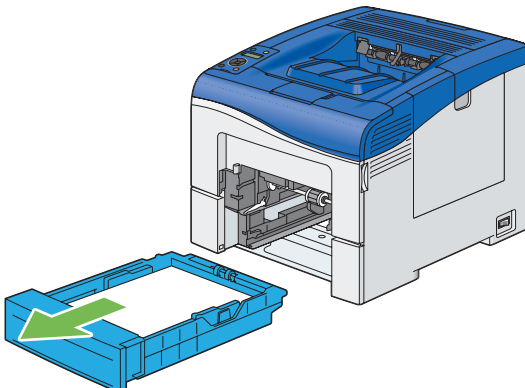
- 2 Grasp both sides of the bypass tray, and then pull the bypass tray from the printer.



- 3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray from the printer about 200 mm.

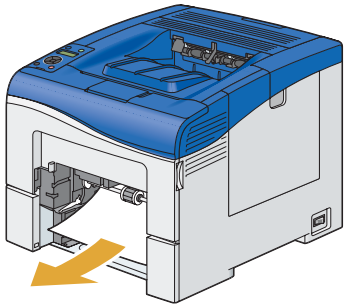


- 4 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

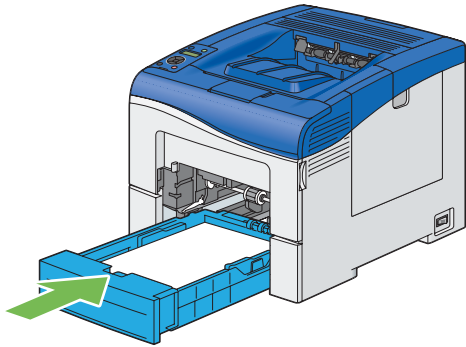




- 5 Remove the jammed paper.



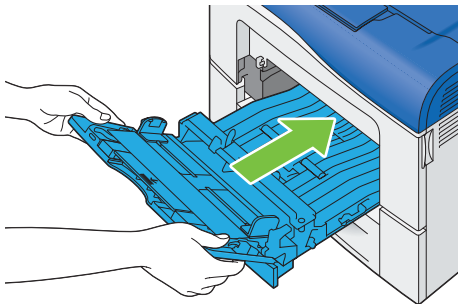
- 6 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.




**IMPORTANT:**

- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

- 7 Insert the bypass tray into the printer, push until it stops, and close the cover.



- 8 Press the  button.

## ■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Fusing Unit

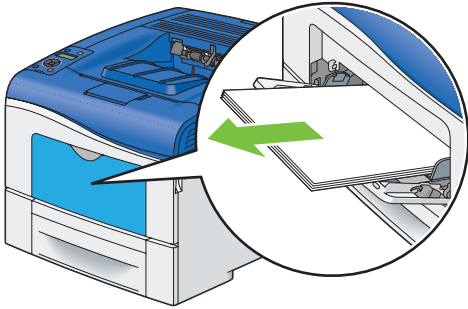
### IMPORTANT:

- Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the belt unit may reduce print quality.
- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

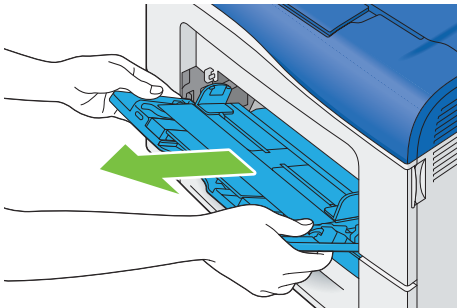
### NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

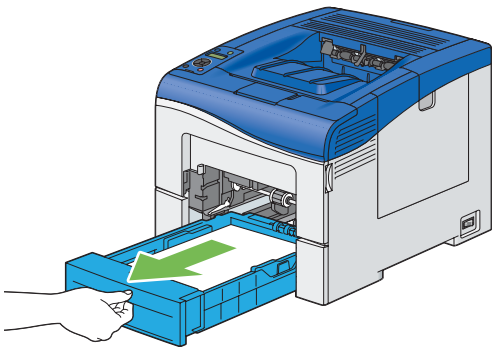
- 1 Open the bypass tray cover, or remove the remaining documents from the bypass tray.



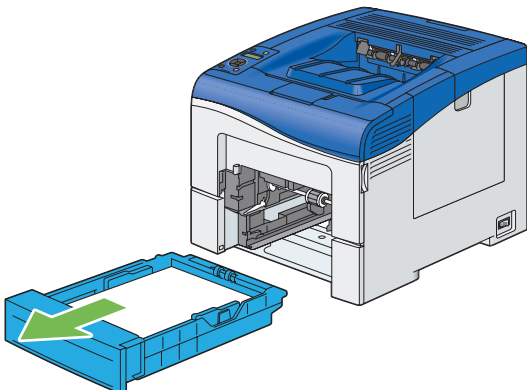
- 2 Grasp both sides of the bypass tray, and then pull the bypass tray from the printer.



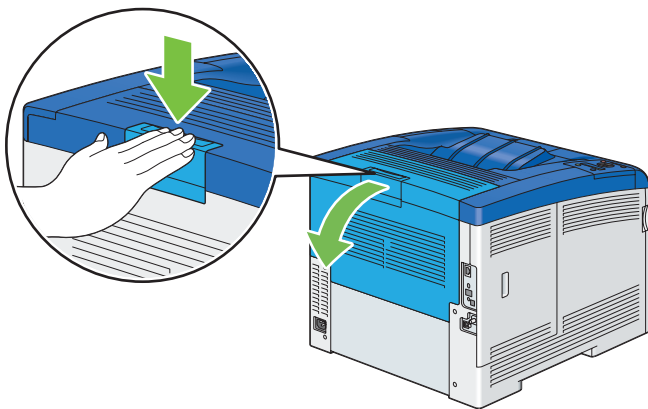
- 3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray from the printer about 200 mm.



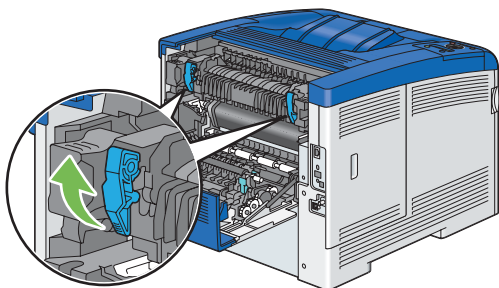
- 4 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



- 5 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



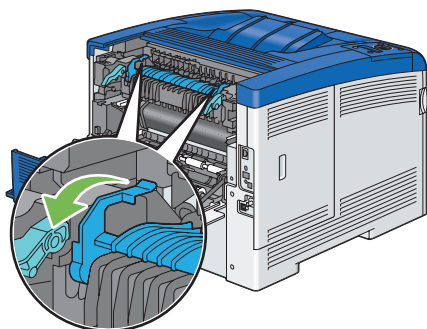
- 6 Lift the levers on both sides of the fusing unit.



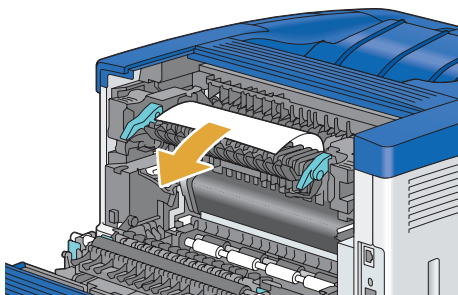
**IMPORTANT:**

- The fusing unit is hot. Do not touch it, doing so may cause burns.

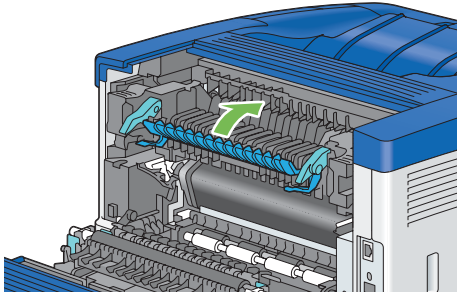
- 7 Hold and lower the tab to open the inner part.



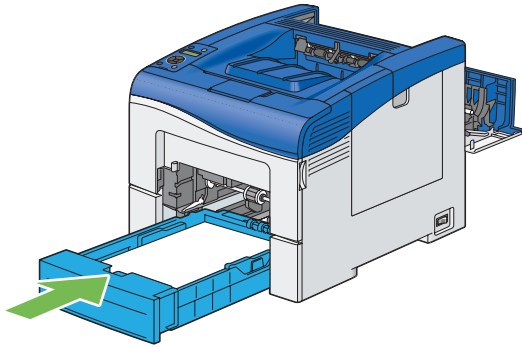
- 8 Remove the jammed paper.



9 Replace the inner part.



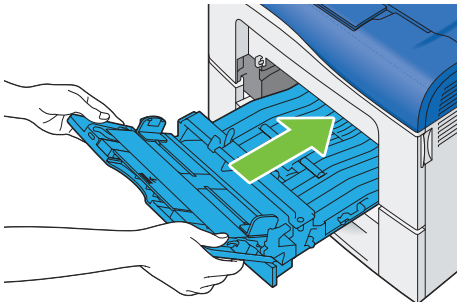
10 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



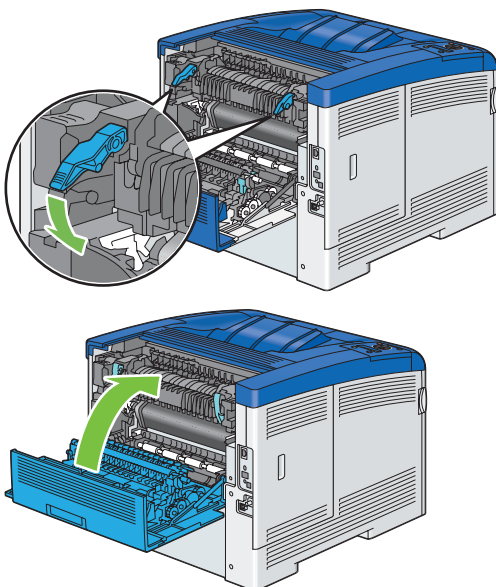
**IMPORTANT:**

- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

11 Insert the bypass tray into the printer, push until it stops, and close the cover.



12 Press down the levers on both sides of the fusing unit, and then close the rear cover.

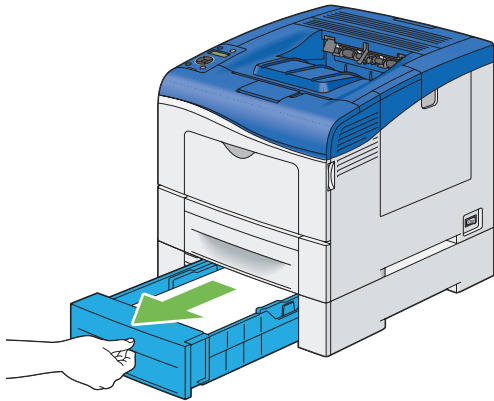


## ■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

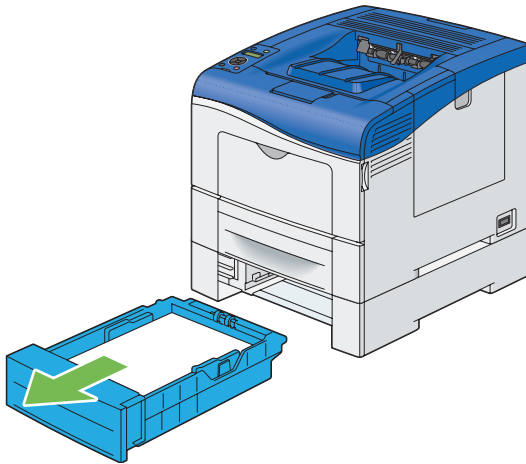
### NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

- 1 Pull the optional 550 sheet feeder from the printer about 200 mm.



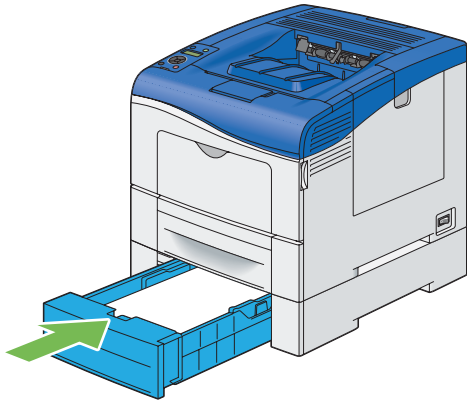
- 2 Hold the optional 550 sheet feeder with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



- 3 Remove the jammed paper.



- 4 Insert the optional 550 sheet feeder into the printer, and push until it stops.



**IMPORTANT:**

- Do not use excessive force on the feeder. Doing so could damage the feeder or the inside of the printer.

# ■ Jam Problems

This section includes:

- ["Standard 550 Sheet Tray/Optional 550 Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam" on page 211](#)
- ["Bypass Tray Misfeed Jam" on page 212](#)
- ["Regi Jam \(Exit Sensor On JAM\)" on page 213](#)
- ["Exit Jam \(Exit Sensor Off JAM\)" on page 213](#)
- ["Standard 550 Sheet Tray/Optional 550 Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam" on page 214](#)
- ["Bypass Tray Multi-feed Jam" on page 214](#)

## Standard 550 Sheet Tray/Optional 550 Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur in the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder.	Ensure that the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder is properly inserted.
	If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used.
	<b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Usable Print Media" on page 116</a></li></ul>
	If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.
	If the problem persists, ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Ensure that the print media is not damp.
	If the print media is damp, turn over the print media.
	If the problem persists, use print media that is not damp.
	If the print media is not damp, fan the print media.
	Fan the print media.

	If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water.
	Wipe the feed roller in the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water.
	If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
<b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li></ul>	
If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.	

## Bypass Tray Misfeed Jam

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur in the bypass tray.	<p>Ensure that the bypass tray is properly inserted.</p> <p>If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <hr/> <p>Verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Usable Print Media" on page 116</a></li></ul> <p>If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>If the problem persists, ensure that the print media is not damp.</p> <hr/> <p>Ensure that the print media is not curled.</p> <p>If the problem persists, fan the print media.</p> <hr/> <p>Ensure that the print media is not damp.</p> <p>If the print media is damp, turn over the print media.</p> <p>If the problem persists, use print media that is not damp.</p> <p>If the print media is not damp, fan the print media.</p> <hr/> <p>Fan the print media.</p> <p>If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water.</p> <hr/> <p>Wipe the feed roller in the bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p> <hr/>



## Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)

Problem	Action
Regi jam (Exit Sensor On JAM) occurs.	<p>Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges as instructed in <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a>.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, ensure that the fusing unit is installed correctly.</p> <hr/> <p>Ensure that the fusing unit is installed correctly.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit as instructed in <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a>.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the fusing unit.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, ensure that the belt unit is installed correctly.</p> <hr/> <p>Ensure that the belt unit is installed correctly.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller as instructed in <a href="#">"Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 269</a>.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 269</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)

Problem	Action
Exit jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM) occurs.	<p>Ensure that the fusing unit is installed correctly.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit as instructed in <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a>.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the fusing unit.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## Standard 550 Sheet Tray/Optional 550 Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Action</b>
Print media multiple feeds occur in the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder.	Ensure that the tray or feeder is properly inserted.
	If using coated paper, load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If using other type of print media, use print media that is not damp.
	Load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Use print media that is not damp.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Fan the print media.
	If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the tray or feeder where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
	Wipe the feed roller in the tray or feeder where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.	

## Bypass Tray Multi-feed Jam

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Action</b>
Print media multiple feeds occur in the bypass tray.	Ensure that the media type you are using.
	If using coated paper, load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If using other type of print media, use print media that is not damp.
	Load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Use print media that is not damp.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Fan the print media.
	If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the tray where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
	Wipe the feed roller in the tray where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.	

# Basic Printer Problems

---

Some printer problems can be easily resolved. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cord is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- All options are properly installed.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

## **IMPORTANT:**

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

## **NOTE:**

- If error messages are displayed on the LCD panel or on your computer, follow the on-screen instructions to resolve the printer problems. For details about error messages and error codes, see "[Understanding Printer Messages](#)" on page 242.

# Display Problems



---

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the software program, the print driver, or the printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel.

# Printing Problems

## NOTE:

- If `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Menu` menu.

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that the top menu appears on the LCD panel before you send a job to print. Press the  ( <b>Menu</b> ) button twice to return to the top menu.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded in the printer. Press the  ( <b>Menu</b> ) button twice to return to the top menu.
	Verify that you are using the correct print driver.
	Ensure that the correct USB cable, Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is securely connected to the printer.
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	Check the printer's interface from the <code>Admin Menu</code> menu. Determine the host interface you are using. Print a <code>Panel Settings</code> page to verify that the current interface settings are correct.
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. <b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Usable Print Media" on page 116</a></li></ul>
	Fan the print media before loading it.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Ensure that the width and length guides of the print media sources are adjusted correctly.
	Ensure that the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray is securely inserted.
	Do not overload the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray.
	Do not force print media into the bypass tray when you load it; otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Face the recommended print side up.
	<b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Loading Print Media" on page 120</a></li></ul>
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix reams of print media.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
Load print media only when the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray is empty.	
Wipe the feed roller in the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water.	
The envelope is creased after printed.	Make sure that the envelope is loaded in the bypass tray as instructed in <a href="#">"Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray" on page 125</a> .
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for the time-out on the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.
Print media does not stack neatly in the output tray.	Turn the print media stack over in the standard 550 sheet tray or the bypass tray.
Cannot print from the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder because the print media in the tray or feeder is curled.	Load the print media into the bypass tray.

# Print Quality Problems

---

This section includes:

- ["The Output Is Too Light"](#) on page 219
- ["Toner Smears or Print Comes Off"](#) on page 220
- ["Random Spots/Blurred Images"](#) on page 221
- ["The Entire Output Is Blank"](#) on page 222
- ["Streaks Appear on the Output"](#) on page 223
- ["Part or the Entire Output Is Black"](#) on page 223
- ["Pitched Color Dots"](#) on page 224
- ["Vertical Blanks"](#) on page 225
- ["Mottle"](#) on page 225
- ["Ghosting"](#) on page 226
- ["Light-Induced Fatigue"](#) on page 226
- ["Fog"](#) on page 227
- ["Bead-Carry-Out \(BCO\)"](#) on page 227
- ["Jagged Characters"](#) on page 228
- ["Banding"](#) on page 229
- ["Auger Mark"](#) on page 229
- ["Wrinkled/Stained Paper"](#) on page 230
- ["Damage on the Leading Edge of Paper"](#) on page 231
- ["The Top and Side Margins Are Incorrect"](#) on page 231
- ["Color Registration Is out of Alignment"](#) on page 232
- ["Protrudent/Bumpy Paper"](#) on page 232
- ["Images Are Skewed"](#) on page 233

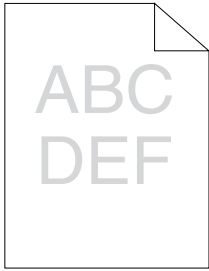
**NOTE:**

- In this section, some procedures use the operator panel, CentreWare Internet Services or PCL 6 driver.

**See also:**

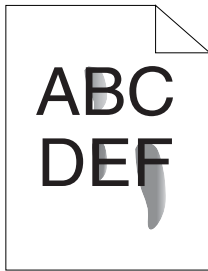
- ["Understanding the Printer Menus"](#) on page 164
- ["CentreWare Internet Services"](#) on page 61

## ■ The Output Is Too Light



Problem	Action
The output is too light.	<p>The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Check the toner level in the <b>Status Monitor</b> window.</li><li>2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, disable <b>Toner Saver</b> in the print driver.</p> <hr/> <p>Disable <b>Toner Saver</b> in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the <b>Image Options</b> tab, ensure that <b>Off</b> is selected in the <b>Toner Saver</b> drop-down menu.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the print driver.</p> <hr/> <p>The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the print driver. For example, change the plain paper to heavyweight using a PCL 6 driver.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the <b>Paper/Output</b> tab, change the <b>Paper Type</b> setting.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <hr/> <p>Verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Usable Print Media" on page 116</a></li></ul> <p>If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>If the problem persists, clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod.</p> <hr/> <p>Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window" on page 252</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

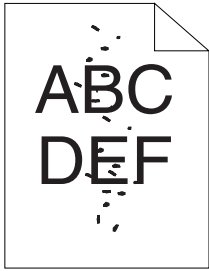
## ■ Toner Smears or Print Comes Off



Problem	Action
Toner smears or print comes off.	<p>The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the print driver. For example, change the plain paper to heavyweight using a PCL 6 driver.</p> <p><b>1</b> On the <b>Paper/Output</b> tab, change the <b>Paper Type</b> setting.</p> <p>If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <hr/> <p>Verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Usable Print Media" on page 116</a></li></ul> <p>If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>1</b> Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p><b>2</b> After you replace the drum cartridges, test print your document again.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit as instructed in <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a>.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the fusing unit.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller as instructed in <a href="#">"Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 269</a>.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 269</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

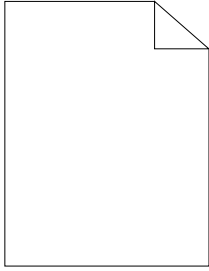


## ■ Random Spots/Blurred Images



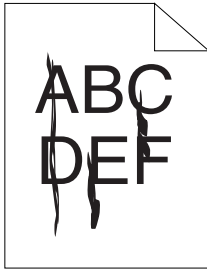
Problem	Action
The printed result has random spots or is blurred.	<p>Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 258</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly.</p> <hr/> <p>Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ The Entire Output Is Blank



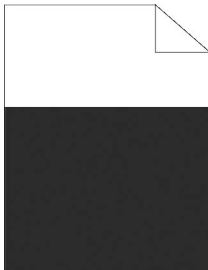
Problem	Action
The entire output is blank.	<p>The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Check the toner level in the <b>Status Monitor</b> window.</li><li>2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, disable <b>Toner Saver</b> in the print driver.</p> <hr/> <p>Disable <b>Toner Saver</b> in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the <b>Image Options</b> tab, ensure that <b>Off</b> is selected in the <b>Toner Saver</b> drop-down menu.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the print driver.</p> <hr/> <p>The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the print driver. For example, change the plain paper to heavyweight using the PCL 6 driver.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the <b>Paper / Output</b> tab, change the <b>Paper Type</b> setting.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <hr/> <p>Verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Usable Print Media" on page 116</a></li></ul> <p>If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Streaks Appear on the Output



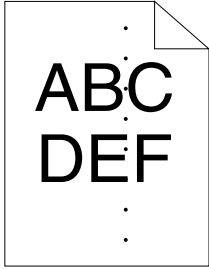
Problem	Action
Streaks appear on the output.	<p>The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Check the toner level in the <b>Status Monitor</b> window.</li><li>2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Part or the Entire Output Is Black



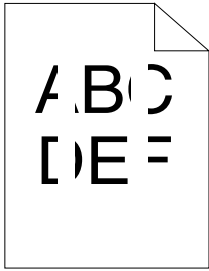
Problem	Action
Part or the entire output is black.	<p>Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, ensure <b>Output Color</b> is set to <b>Color</b> in the print driver.</p> <p>Ensure <b>Output Color</b> is set to <b>Color</b> in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the <b>Color Options</b> tab, ensure that the <b>Output Color</b> is set to <b>Color</b>.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Pitched Color Dots



Problem	Action
The printed result has pitched color dots.	<p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the fusing unit.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p> <hr/> <p>Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 269</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Vertical Blanks

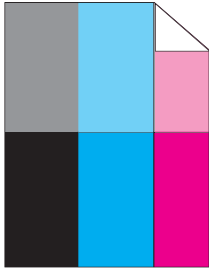



Problem	Action
The printed result has vertical blanks.	<p>Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window" on page 252</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, ensure the light path is not covered.</p>
	<p>Ensure the light path is not covered.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Remove the drum cartridges, and keep it in the dark place.</li></ol> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li></ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>2 Check the light path, and then remove the shielding.</li><li>3 Re-install the drum cartridges.</li></ol> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p>
	<p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Mottle

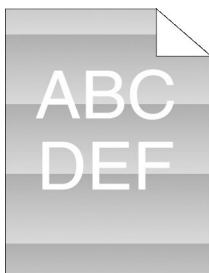
Problem	Action
The printed result has mottled appearance.	<p>Verify that the print media recommended for the printer is being used.</p> <p>If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Ghosting



Problem	Action
The printed result has ghosting.	<p>If the type of the ghosting is positive ghost: Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p> <hr/> <p>If the type of the ghosting is negative ghost: Verify that the print media recommended for the printer is being used. If you are using non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem is solved, adjust the transfer bias. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <hr/> <p>Adjust the transfer bias.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the operator panel, press the  (<b>Menu</b>) button and select <code>Admin Menu</code> → <code>Maintenance Mode</code> → <code>Adjust BTR</code>.</li><li>2 Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used.</li></ol> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Light-Induced Fatigue



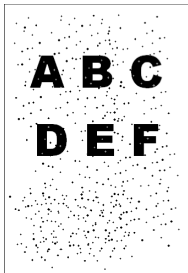
Problem	Action
The printed result has light-induced fatigue pattern.	<p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Fog



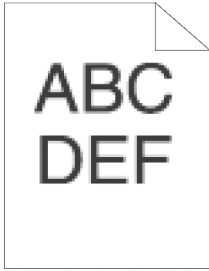
Problem	Action
The printed result is foggy.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.  <b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

## ■ Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)



Problem	Action
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) is happening.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.  <b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

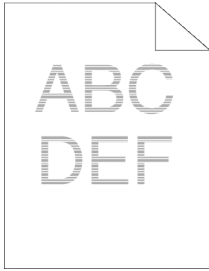
## ■ Jagged Characters



Problem	Action
The printed result has jagged characters.	<p>Set <b>Screen</b> to <b>Fineness</b> in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.</p> <p>1 On the <b>Advanced</b> tab, set <b>Screen</b> under <b>Image Options</b> to <b>Fineness</b>.</p> <p>If the problem persists, set <b>Image Quality</b> to <b>High Quality</b> in the print driver.</p> <hr/> <p>Set <b>Image Quality</b> to <b>High Quality</b> in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.</p> <p>1 On the <b>Color Options</b> tab, select <b>High Quality</b> from <b>Image Quality</b>.</p> <p>If the problem persists, enable <b>Bitmap Smoothing</b> in the print driver.</p> <hr/> <p>Enable <b>Bitmap Smoothing</b> in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.</p> <p>1 On the <b>Advanced</b> tab, set <b>Bitmap Smoothing</b> under <b>Image Options</b>: to <b>On</b>.</p> <p>If the problem persists, enable <b>Print Page Mode</b> in the print driver.</p> <hr/> <p>Enable <b>Print Page Mode</b> in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.</p> <p>1 On the <b>Advanced</b> tab, set <b>Print Page Mode</b> under <b>Image Options</b>: to <b>On</b>.</p> <p>If the problem persists, check whether or not the downloaded font you are using is recommended.</p> <hr/> <p>If using a downloaded font, ensure that the font is recommended for the printer, operating system, and the application being used.</p> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

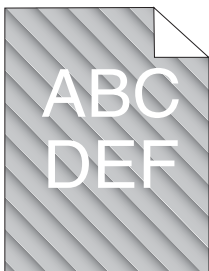


## ■ Banding



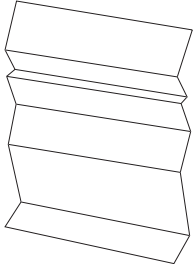
Problem	Action
The printed result has banding.	<p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>
	<p>Replace the fusing unit if you have a spare unit.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a></li></ul> <p>If the cause of the problem is not located, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>
	<p>Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 269</a></li></ul> <p>If the cause of the problem is not located, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Auger Mark



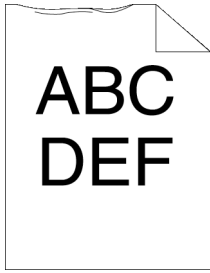
Problem	Action
The printed result has auger mark.	<p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Wrinkled/Stained Paper



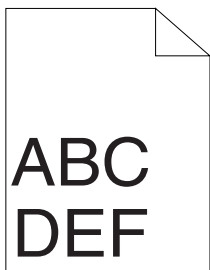
Problem	Action
The output is wrinkled. The output is stained.	<p>Verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Usable Print Media" on page 116</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"About Print Media" on page 114</a></li></ul> <p>If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>If the problem with printing on an envelope persists, check the wrinkle of the envelope.</p> <p>If the problem with printing on a print media other than envelopes persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p> <hr/> <p>Check whether the wrinkle of the four edges of the envelope is within 30 mm.</p> <p>If the wrinkle of the four edges of the envelope is within 30 mm, this type of wrinkle is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault.</p> <p>If not, load the envelopes in the bypass tray properly.</p> <hr/> <p>Load the envelopes in the bypass tray properly.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray" on page 125</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Damage on the Leading Edge of Paper



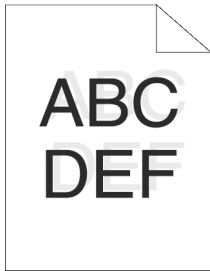
Problem	Action
The output is damaged on its leading edge.	When using the bypass tray, reverse the paper and then try again.
	If the problem persists, change the paper with another one and then try again.
	When using the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder, change the paper and then try again.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Change the paper with another one and then try again.
	If the problem persists, use the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder in place of the bypass tray.
	Use the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder in place of the bypass tray.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.



## ■ The Top and Side Margins Are Incorrect



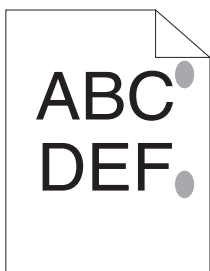
Problem	Action
The top and side margins are incorrect.	Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

## ■ Color Registration Is out of Alignment



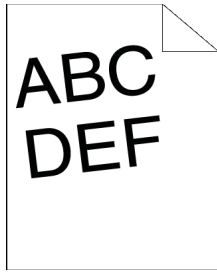
Problem	Action
Color registration is out of alignment.	<p>Adjust the settings of the paper type on the print driver to those of the tray or feeder. If the problem persists, execute auto color registration adjustment.</p> <p>Execute auto color registration adjustment.</p> <p><b>1</b> On the operator panel, press the  (<b>Menu</b>) button and select <code>Admin Menu</code> → <code>Maintenance Mode</code> → <code>Adjust ColorRegi</code> → <code>Auto Adjust</code>, and then press the  button.</p> <p>If the problem persists, check whether or not you have spare drum cartridges.</p> <p>Check whether or not you have spare drum cartridges.</p> <p>If you have spare drum cartridges, replace the drum cartridges.</p> <p>If you do not have spare drum cartridges, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p> <p>Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Protrudent/Bumpy Paper



Problem	Action
Printed surface got protrudent/bumpy.	<p>Clean up the fusing unit.</p> <p><b>1</b> Load one sheet of paper in the bypass tray, and then print a solid image all over paper.</p> <p><b>2</b> Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.</p> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

## ■ Images Are Skewed



Problem	Action
The printed result are skewed.	<p>Adjust the paper guides properly.</p> <p>If the problem persists, install the belt unit according to an appropriate procedure.</p> <hr/> <p>Install the belt unit according to an appropriate procedure.</p> <p><b>See also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Installing a Belt Unit" on page 273</a></li></ul> <p>If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.</p>

# Noise

---

Problem	Action
The printed result has the noise.	To specify the cause of the noise, perform the Auto Registration.
	If the problem is solved, replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller.
	If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit.
	Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller.
	<b>See also:</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 269</a></li></ul>
	If the problem persists, replace the waste toner box.
	Replace the fusing unit.
	<b>See also:</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 266</a></li></ul>
	If the problem persists, replace the black toner cartridge.
	Replace the waste toner box.
	<b>See also:</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Waste Toner Box" on page 278</a></li></ul>
If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges.	
Replace the drum cartridges.	
<b>See also:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 260</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263</a></li></ul>	
If the problem persists, replace the black toner cartridge.	
Replace the black toner cartridge.	
<b>See also:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 257</a></li></ul>	
If the problem persists, replace the yellow toner cartridge.	
Replace the yellow toner cartridge.	
<b>See also:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 257</a></li></ul>	
If the problem persists, replace the magenta toner cartridge.	
Replace the magenta toner cartridge.	
<b>See also:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 257</a></li></ul>	
If the problem persists, replace the cyan toner cartridge.	
Replace the cyan toner cartridge.	
<b>See also:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 257</a></li></ul>	
If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.	

# Adjusting Color Registration

---

This section describes how to adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location.

This section includes:







- "Performing Auto Adjust" on page 235
- "Printing the Color Registration Chart" on page 235
- "Determining Values" on page 236
- "Entering Values" on page 238

## NOTE:







- If `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Menu` menu.

## ■ Performing Auto Adjust

Auto Adjust allows you to correct the color registration automatically.

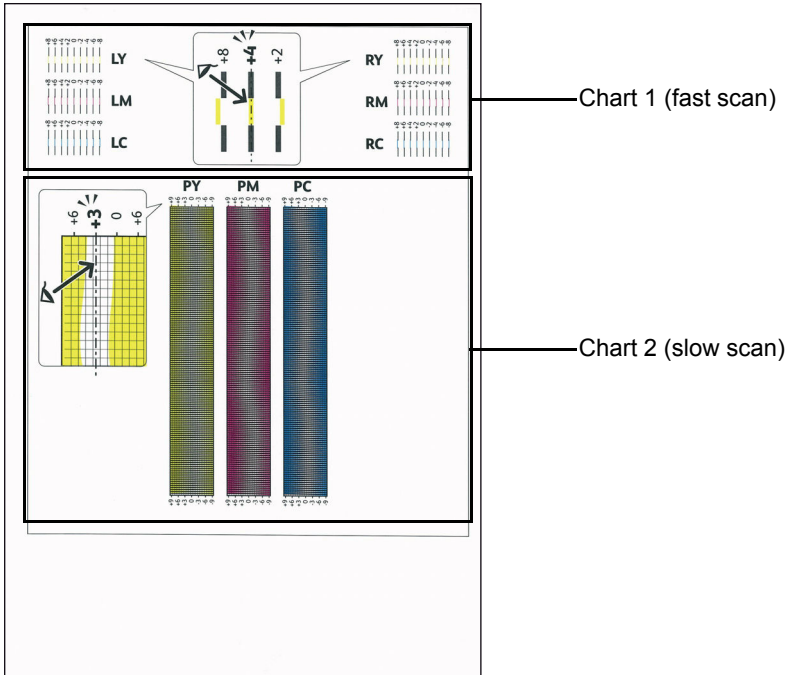
- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance Mode`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Adjust ColorRegi`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Auto Adjust`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Ensure that `Are You Sure?` appears, and then press the  button. Auto Adjust is performed.

## ■ Printing the Color Registration Chart

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance Mode`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Adjust ColorRegi`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `ColorRegi Chart`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Ensure that `Are You Sure?` appears, and then press the  button. The color registration chart is printed.

# Determining Values

On the color registration chart, there are two types of charts: Chart 1 (fast scan) and Chart 2 (slow scan).



The Chart 1 is used to adjust the color registration for the fast scan direction, which is vertical to paper feed direction. The Chart 2 is used to adjust the color registration for the slow scan direction, which is horizontal to paper feed direction.

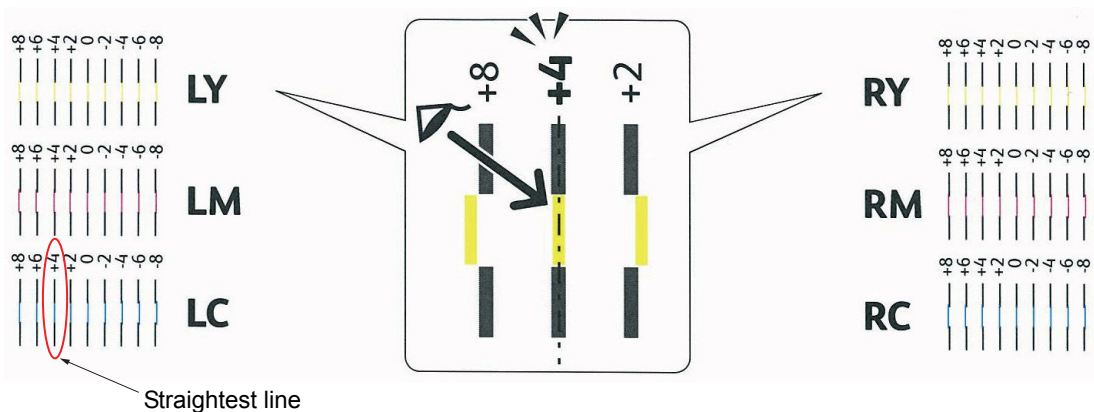
The following sections explain how to determine the adjustment values for the fast scan and the slow scan using Chart 1 and Chart 2.

## Fast Scan

On the Chart 1 of the color registration chart, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (LY, LM, LC, RY, RM, and RC). If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-8 to +8) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the fast scan.

When the value is not 0, enter the value using the procedure in ["Entering Values" on page 238](#).



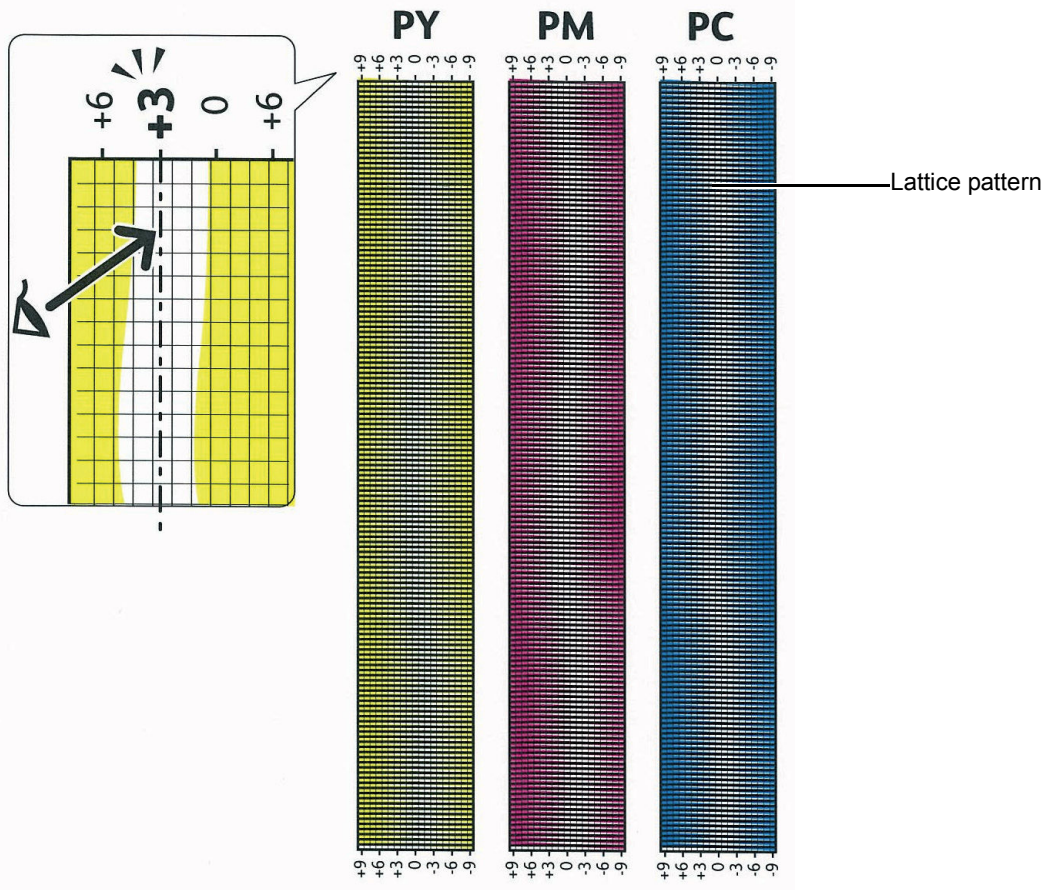


# Slow Scan

On the Chart 2 of the color registration chart, find the medium line within the range of white area for each color pattern (**PY**, **PM**, and **PC**). If you find the medium line, make a note of the value (-9 to +9) indicated by the medium line for each color.








When the value is **0** for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the slow scan.

When the value is not **0**, enter the value using the procedure in ["Entering Values" on page 238](#).







## ■ Entering Values

Using the operator panel, enter the values found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.


- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance Mode`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Adjust ColorRegi`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Enter Number`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Ensure that `Enter (LY, LM, LC)` appears.
- 7 Press the  or  button to specify the values for LY, LM, and LC.




### NOTE:

- To move the cursor to the next value, press the  button.


- 8 Press the  button.
- 9 Ensure that `Enter (RY, RM, RC)` appears.
- 10 Press the  or  button to specify the values for RY, RM, and RC.


### NOTE:

- To move the cursor to the next value, press the  button.

- 11 Press the  button.
- 12 Ensure that `Enter (PY, PM, PC)` appears.
- 13 Press the  or  button to specify the values for PY, PM, and PC.



### NOTE:

- To move the cursor to the next value, press the  button.

- 14 Press the  button.

### NOTE:

- The registration values are always shown as 0 the next time you enter the menu.

- 15 Select `ColorRegi Chart`, and then press the  button.
- 16 Ensure that `Are You Sure?` appears, and then press the  button.

The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

If the straightest line is not at the value of 0, adjust the values again. Checking the charts before and after the adjustments will help you to determine the values to enter.

After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

### IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

# Digital Certificate Problem

Problem	Action
The <b>Upload Signed Certificate</b> button is not displayed.	Confirm whether the optional hard disk unit is connected correctly, and confirm whether data encryption is enabled from the operator panel.
The certificate import button is disabled.	Create a self-signed certificate and enable SSL.
<b>The Certificate Management</b> button is disabled.	
The certificate cannot be imported.	<p>Confirm validity period of the certificate as well as the time setting of the device.</p> <p>Confirm whether the password is correct.</p> <p>Confirm whether the file type is PKCS#7/#12 or x509CACert (extension: p7b/p12/pfx/cer/crt).</p> <p>Confirm whether the attribute information (key Usage/Extended key usage) of the certificate to be imported is set correctly.</p> <p>Use Internet Explorer.</p>
016-404 is displayed when setting the encryption of the optional hard disk unit to off.	After initializing, import the certificate and enable the security settings again. The action is the same when formatting the optional hard disk unit.
016-404 is displayed when formatting the optional hard disk unit.	
Security is set to off when setting encryption of the optional hard disk unit to off.	
Security is set to off when formatting the optional hard disk unit.	
A certificate is deleted when setting encryption of the optional hard disk unit to off.	
A certificate is deleted when formatting the optional hard disk unit.	
A certificate cannot be set in <b>Certificate Details</b> page.	<p>The validity period of the certificate is invalid.</p> <p>Confirm whether the time setting of the machine is correct, and whether the validity period of the certificate has expired.</p> <p>The certificate chain (path validation) of the imported certificate may not be correctly validated.</p> <p>Confirm whether all of the high-level certificates (Trusted/Intermediate) have been imported and are not deleted, and whether the validity period has expired.</p>
Although a certificate was imported, it is not displayed when selecting <b>Local Device</b> for <b>Category in Certificate Management</b> page.	To import a certificate for use with the device (own device), import the secret key and a certificate of the PKCS#12 (p12/pfx) format as a pair.
Server validation is not operating correctly.	<p>Although importing a root certificate (Trusted) to use for server authentication, an Intermediate certificate may be required when validating the path.</p> <p>When executing a certificate file with the certification authority, create the certificate with a format including all paths and then import that certificate.</p>
<b>Digital Signature</b> cannot be selected with the IPsec setting.	Either the certificate has not been imported or the certificate has not been associated for use with <b>Digital Signature</b> mode of IPsec. See <a href="#">"Using Digital Certificates" on page 150</a> to set a certificate of IPsec.

# Problems With Installed Optional Accessories

If an option does not operate correctly following installation or stops working:

- Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. If this does not fix the problem, unplug the printer, and check the connection between the option and the printer.

## IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.
- Ensure the option is selected in the print driver you are using.
- Print the Printer Settings page to see if the option is listed in the **Printer Options** list. If the option is not listed, re-install it.

## See also:

- ["Report / List" on page 164](#)

The following table lists printer's option and corrective action for related problem. If the suggested corrective action does not correct the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Problem	Action
The optional 550 sheet feeder does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional 550 sheet feeder is correctly installed on the printer. Re-install the optional 550 sheet feeder.  <b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 292</a></li><li>• <a href="#">"Installing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 40</a></li></ul> If the problem persists, contact customer support.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.  <b>See also:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">"Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 121</a></li></ul> If the problem persists, contact customer support.
The optional 512MB memory does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional 512MB memory is securely connected to the memory connector.  If the problem persists, contact customer support.
The optional hard disk unit does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional hard disk unit is securely inserted to the correct slot.
The optional wireless printer adapter does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional wireless printer adapter is securely inserted to the correct slot.

# Other Problems

---

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.

---

# Understanding Printer Messages

The printer LCD panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This section describes messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.





When you contact the customer support about an error, have the error codes and messages ready.




## IMPORTANT:

- When an error code is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

## NOTE:

- An error code is listed in an error message.
- For error messages that are not listed in this chapter, refer to instructions in each error messages.

Error-Code	What You Can Do
010-317	Turn off the printer and wait for 30 minutes. Open the rear cover and make sure that the fusing unit is fully installed, and turn on the printer.
010-397	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the fusing unit is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-404	Contact your system administrator.
016-405	
016-500	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
016-501	
016-502	
016-520	Contact your system administrator.
016-521	
016-522	
016-523	
016-524	
016-527	
016-570	
016-571	
016-572	
016-573	
016-718	Press the  button, or wait for the time set in <code>Fault Time-out</code> for the printer to recover. The file size exceeds the maximum for the printer to process. Print the file from your computer.
016-720	
016-737	Press the  button, or wait for the time set in <code>Fault Time-out</code> for the printer to recover.
016-741	
016-744	
016-746	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
016-750	
016-753	Press the  button to recover the printer.
016-755	
016-757	
016-758	
016-759	Press the  button, or wait for the time set in <code>Fault Time-out</code> for the printer to recover.
016-799	
016-920	
016-921	Contact your server administrator.
016-922	

016-923	Press the  button, or wait for the time set in <code>Fault Time-out</code> for the printer to recover. Modify the setting of WEP key or WPA pass phrase.
016-930	The device is not supported. Remove it from the USB port.
016-931	The USB hub is not supported. Remove it from the USB port.
016-982	Press the  button, or wait for the time set in <code>Fault Time-out</code> for the printer to recover.
042-700	Wait for a while until the printer cools down.
077-215	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the duplexer is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
093-925	Turn off the printer. Confirm the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
093-950	Turn off the printer. Confirm the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
093-951	Turn off the printer. Confirm the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
093-952	Turn off the printer. Confirm the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
116-316	Turn off the printer. Remove the optional 512MB memory from the slot, and then reattach it firmly. Turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
116-317	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
116-320	Remove the unsupported additional memory module. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
116-721	Press the  button, or wait for the time set in <code>Fault Time-out</code> for the printer to recover.
116-722	

# Contacting Service

---

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the LCD panel.

You need to know the model type and service tag of your printer. See the label located on the rear of your printer.



# Getting Help

---

This section includes:

- "LCD Panel Messages" on page 245
- "SimpleMonitor Alerts" on page 245
- "Obtaining the Product Information" on page 245

Fuji Xerox provides several automatic diagnostic tools to help you produce and maintain print quality.

## ■ LCD Panel Messages

The LCD panel provides you with information and troubleshooting help. When an error or warning condition occurs, the LCD panel displays a message informing you of the problem.

**See also:**

- "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 242

## ■ SimpleMonitor Alerts

The SimpleMonitor is a tool that is included on the *Driver CD Kit*. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. If the printer is unable to print your job, the SimpleMonitor automatically displays an alert on your computer screen to let you know that the printer needs attention.

## ■ Obtaining the Product Information

### Obtaining the Latest Print Driver

The latest print driver can be obtained by downloading it from our web site.

The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

**NOTE:**

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

- 1 In your print driver's **Printing Preferences** dialog box, select the **Advanced** tab and then click **About**.
- 2 Click **Fuji Xerox Web Site**.  
Your web browser launches and our web site is displayed.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the web site and download an appropriate print driver.

**NOTE:**

- You can browse our web site also on the *Driver CD Kit* included with the printer. To access the web site, click **Fuji Xerox Web Site** on the installation startup window of the CD-ROM.
- The URL of the driver download service page is as follows: <http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>
- For the latest information about the print driver features, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

## Updating the Printer's Firmware

Our web site also provides a tool that allows you to update the printer's firmware (software embedded within the printer) from your computer.

The latest firmware and updating tool can be downloaded from the following URL.

Follow the instructions on the web site and download the correct firmware update.

<http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

**NOTE:**

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

# Non-Genuine Mode

---

When toner within a toner cartridge is empty, the `Replace XXXX Cartridge` (XXXX: Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, or Black) message appears.







When you want to use the printer in Non-Genuine mode, program the mode and replace the toner cartridge.

## IMPORTANT:

- If you use the printer in the Non-Genuine mode, the performance of the printer may not be at its optimum. And any problems that may arise from the use of the Non-Genuine mode are not covered by our quality guarantee. The continuous use of the Non-Genuine mode can also cause the printer to break down, and any repair charges for such break down will be incurred by users.

## NOTE:

- Before starting the operation described below, confirm that `Ready` is displayed on the LCD panel.

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance Mode`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Non-Genuine`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Toner`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `On`, and then press the  button.  
The printer switches to the Non-Genuine mode.

# Maintenance

This chapter includes:

- ["Cleaning the Printer" on page 248](#)
- ["Replacing Consumables" on page 256](#)
- ["Ordering Supplies" on page 281](#)
- ["Storing Print Media" on page 283](#)
- ["Storing Consumables" on page 284](#)
- ["Managing the Printer" on page 285](#)
- ["Conserving Supplies" on page 286](#)
- ["Checking Page Counts" on page 287](#)
- ["Moving the Printer" on page 288](#)
- ["Removing Options" on page 289](#)

# Cleaning the Printer

This section describes how to clean the printer in order to maintain it in good condition and print clean printouts all the time.

**⚠ WARNING:**

- When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners to avoid catching fire and explosion.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

- When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

This section includes:

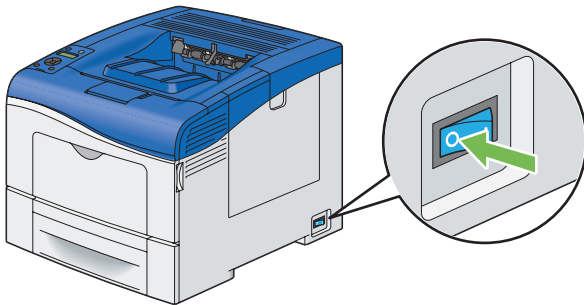
- "Cleaning Inside the Printer" on page 248
- "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 248

## ■ Cleaning Inside the Printer

### Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor

Clean the Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the Printer Status window or operator panel.

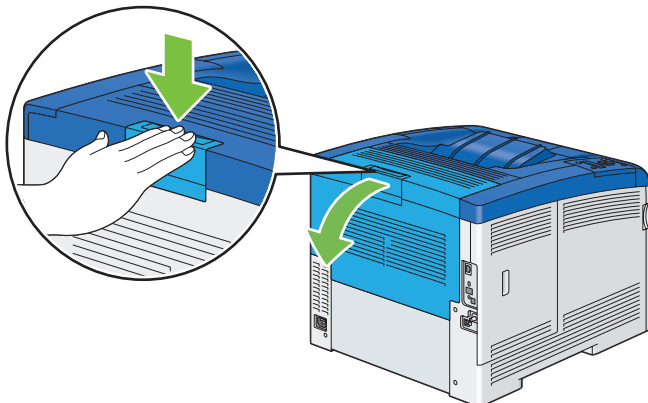
- 1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord.



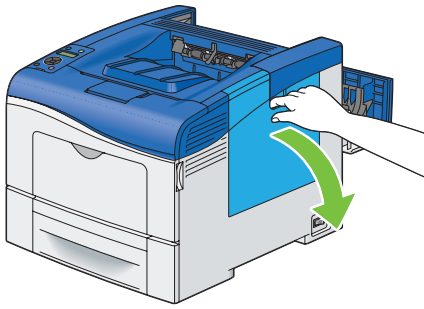
**IMPORTANT:**

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

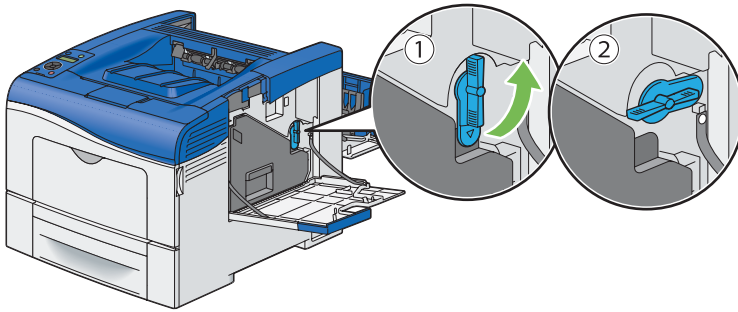
- 2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



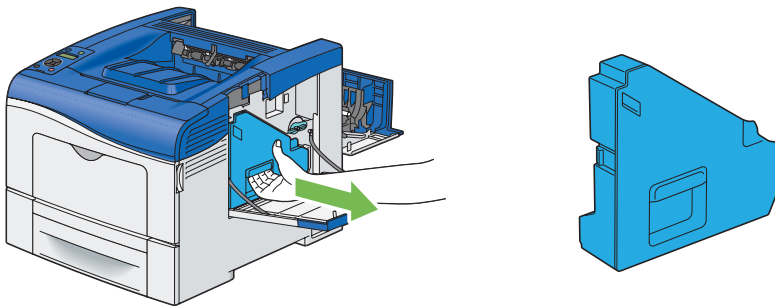
3 Open the side cover.



4 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

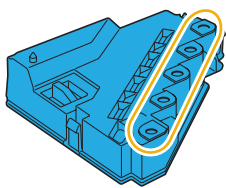


5 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

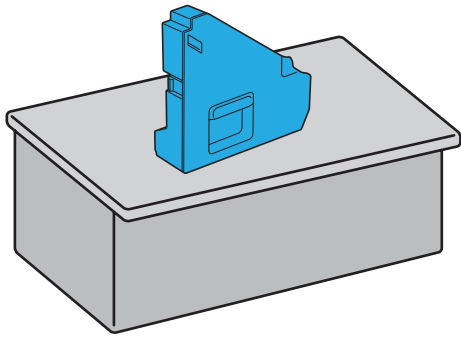


**NOTE:**

- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.

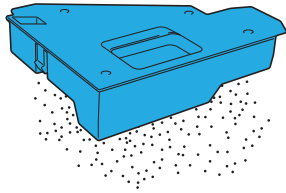


- 6 Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.

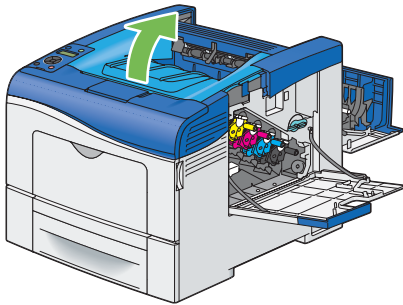


**IMPORTANT:**

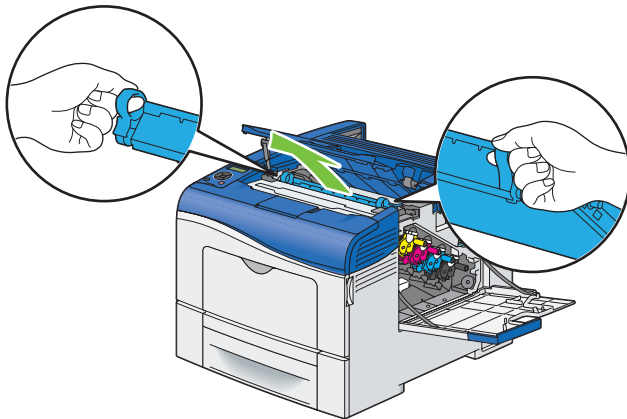
- Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



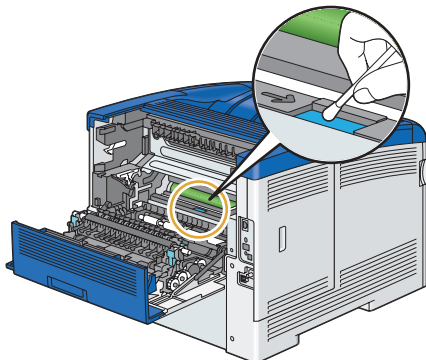
- 7 Open the top cover.



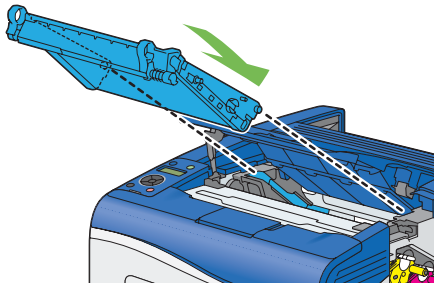
- 8 Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the belt unit, and then pull it out.



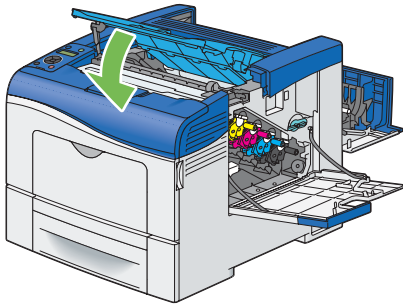
- 9 At the rear of inside the printer, clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab.



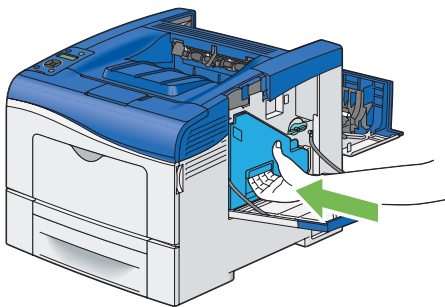
**10** Reinsert the belt unit into the printer.



**11** Close the top cover.



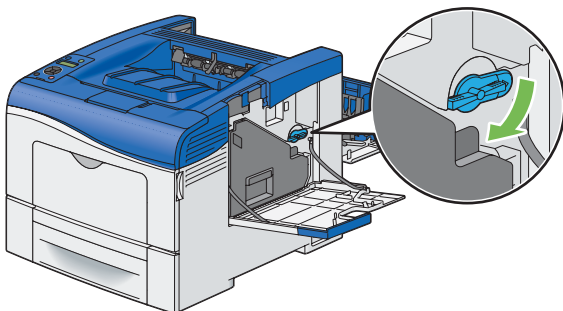
**12** Reinsert the removed waste toner box.



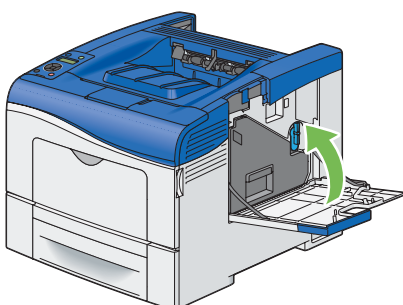
**NOTE:**

- If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

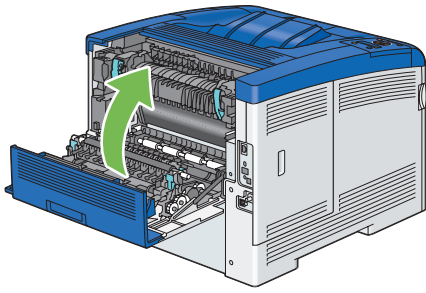
**13** Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



**14** Close the side cover.



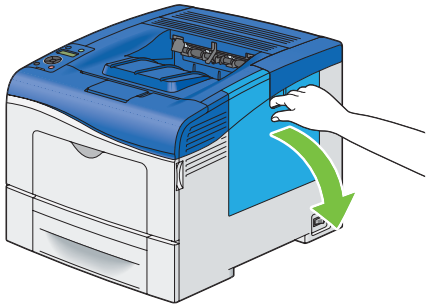
- 15 Close the rear cover.



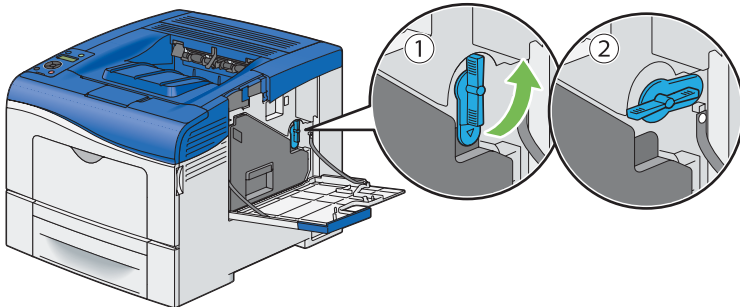
## Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window

To prevent deterioration of printing quality due to stains inside the printer, clean inside the printer regularly by using the cleaning rod whenever you replace drum cartridges.

- 1 Open the side cover.

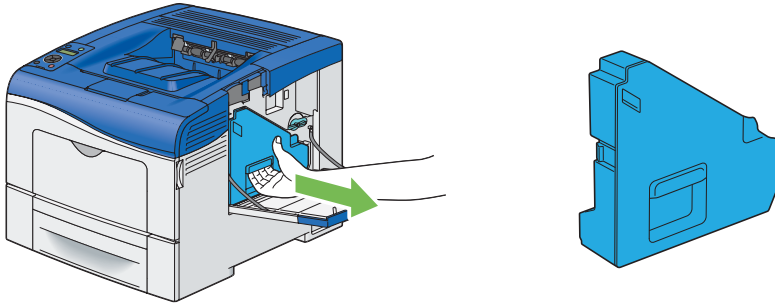


- 2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.



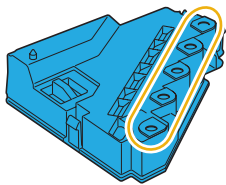


- 3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

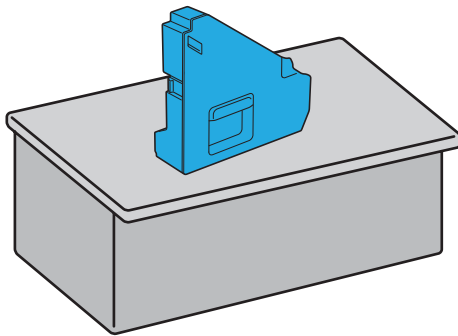


**NOTE:**

- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.

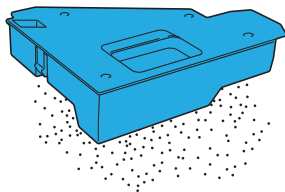


- 4 Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.

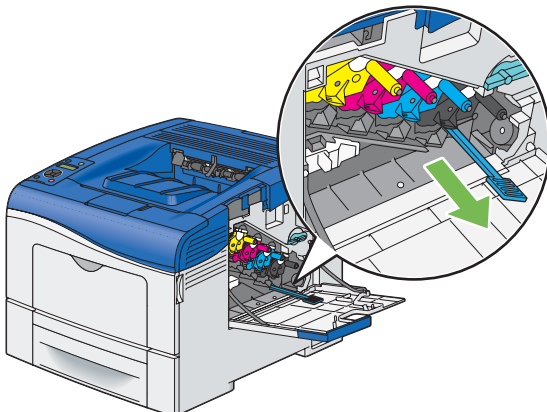


**IMPORTANT:**

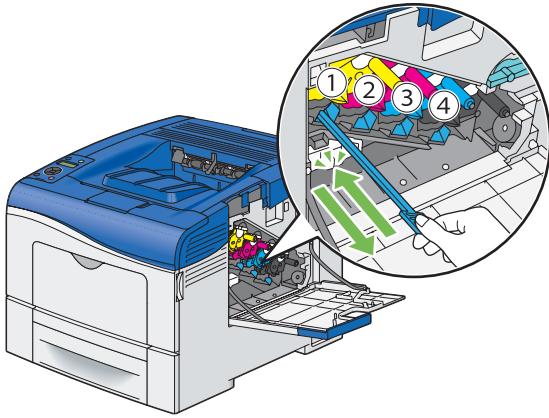
- Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



- 5 Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.

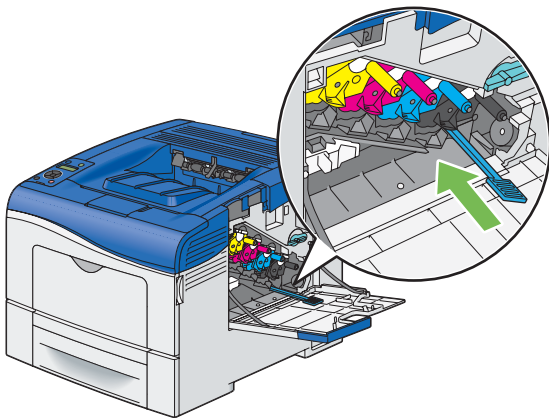


- 6 Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.

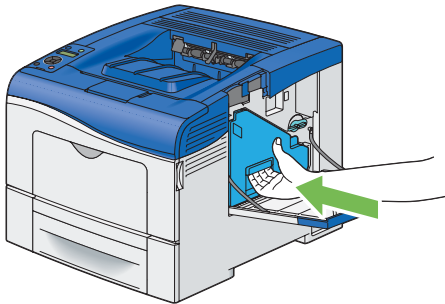


- 7 Repeat step 6 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.

- 8 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.



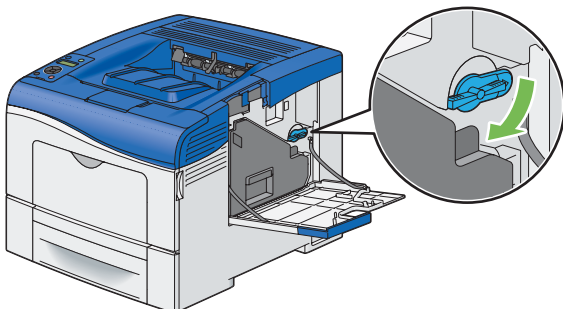
- 9 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.



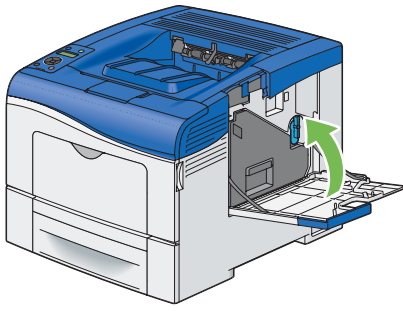
**NOTE:**

- If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

- 10 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



**11** Close the side cover.



# Replacing Consumables

---

This section describes how to replace consumables.

The following consumables are supplied as the replaceable items.

- Toner cartridge
- Drum cartridge
- Fusing unit
- Belt unit
- 2nd BTR
- Retard Roller
- Waste toner box



## **WARNING:**

- **Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.**
- **Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.**
- **Never throw a waste toner bottle into an open flame. Toner may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used waste toner bottle no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.**



## **CAUTION:**

- **Keep drum cartridges and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.**
- **When replacing drum cartridges and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.**
- **If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water. If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary. If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water. If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.**

# ■ Replacing the Toner Cartridges

Fuji Xerox toner cartridges are available only through Fuji Xerox.

It is recommended that you use Fuji Xerox toner cartridges for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Fuji Xerox.

## IMPORTANT:

- Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of the toner.

This section includes:

- ["Overview" on page 257](#)
- ["Removing the Toner Cartridge" on page 258](#)
- ["Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 258](#)

## Overview

The printer has toner cartridges of four colors: black (K), yellow (Y), magenta (M), and cyan (C).

When a toner cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
XXXX Low Replace Soon* <sup>1</sup>	1,400 pages (K) 1,000 pages (Y/M/C)* <sup>2</sup>	The toner cartridge has become low. Prepare a new one.
Replace XXXX Cartridge	-	The toner cartridge has become empty. Replace the old toner cartridge with a new one.

\*1: This warning appears only when Fuji Xerox toner cartridge is used (Non-Genuine mode is set to Off).

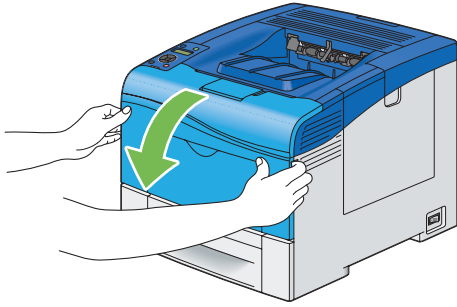
\*2: When a high capacity toner cartridge is set, the remaining page yield is approx. 2,200 pages. The remaining page yield differs depending on printing conditions, contents of the documents, and frequency of turning on/off the printer. For more information, see IMPORTANT of ["Consumables" on page 281](#).

## IMPORTANT:

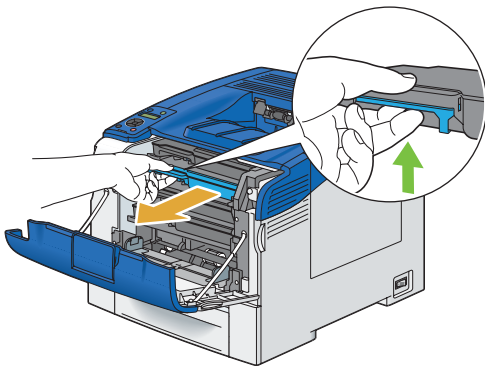
- When placing a used toner cartridge on the floor or on a table, place a few sheets of paper under the toner cartridge to catch any toner that may spill.
- Do not reuse old toner cartridges once you remove them from the printer. Doing so can impair print quality.
- Do not shake or pound the used toner cartridges. The remaining toner may spill.
- We recommend you to use up the toner cartridges within one year after removing them from the packaging.

## Removing the Toner Cartridge

- 1 Grasp the grips on both sides of the front cover, and then pull it down to open.



- 2 Grasp the handle on the toner cartridge that you want to replace as shown in the following illustration, and then pull it out.



### IMPORTANT:

- Do not shake the toner cartridge as it may cause toner spills.

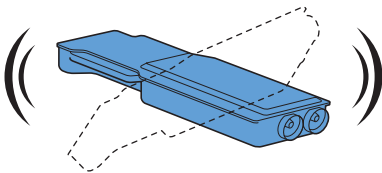
## Installing a Toner Cartridge

- 1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color.

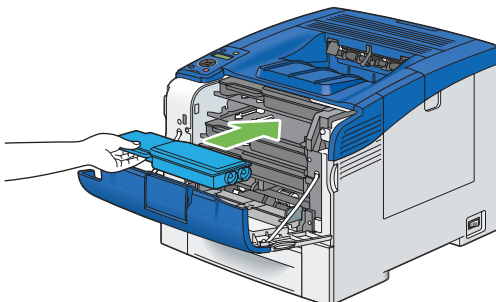
### NOTE:

- Ensure that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it.
- Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spilling of the toner.

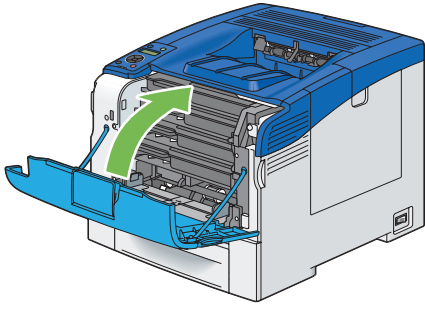
- 2 Shake the new toner cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly.



- 3 Insert the toner cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.



4 Close the front cover.



## ■ Replacing the Drum Cartridges

This section describes how to replace the drum cartridges.

You need to replace all drum cartridges (yellow, magenta, cyan, and black) at a time.

### IMPORTANT:

- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

This section includes:

- ["Removing the Drum Cartridges" on page 261](#)
- ["Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 263](#)

## Overview

The printer has drum cartridges of four colors: black (K), yellow (Y), magenta (M), and cyan (C).

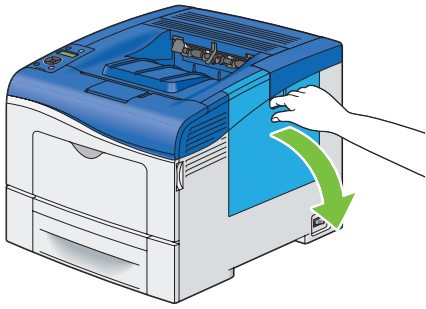
When a drum cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
DrumCartridgeKit Replace Soon	12,000 pages	The drum cartridge is near the end of its life. Prepare a new one.
Replace Drum Cartridge Kit	-	The drum cartridge has reached the end of its life. Replace the old drum cartridge with a new one.

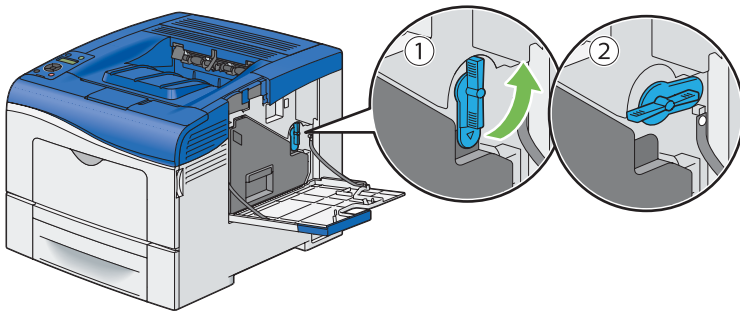


# Removing the Drum Cartridges

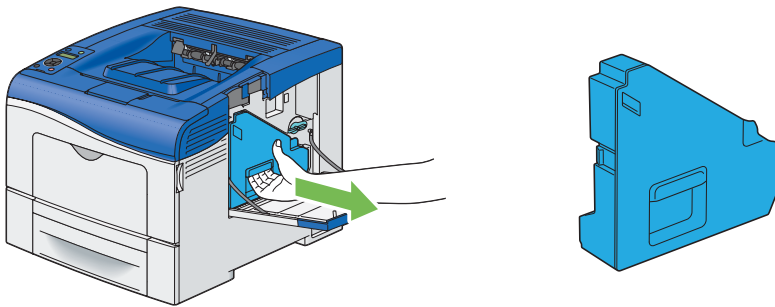
- 1 Open the side cover.



- 2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

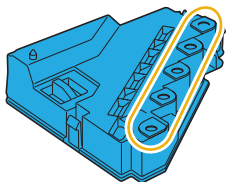


- 3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

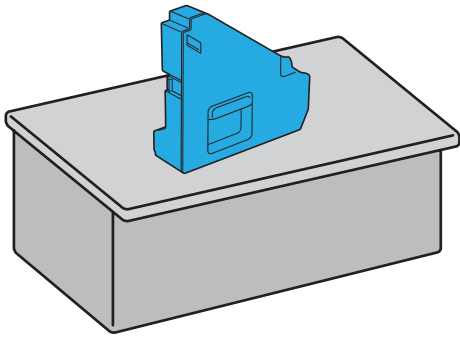


## NOTE:

- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.

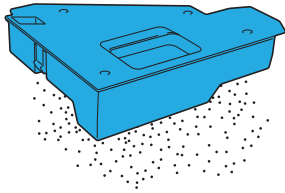


- 4 Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.

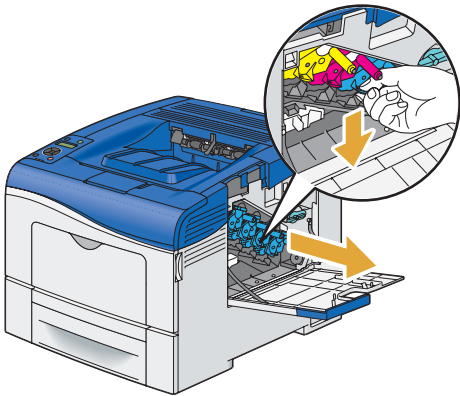


**IMPORTANT:**

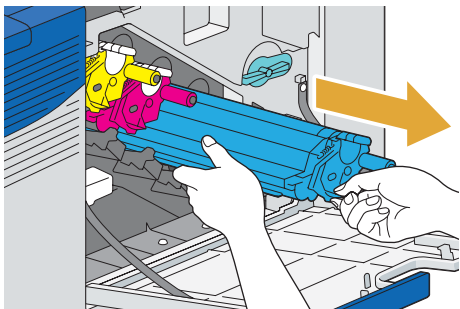
- Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



- 5 Slightly pressing down the tab on the drum cartridge that you want to replace, pull it out halfway with one hand.



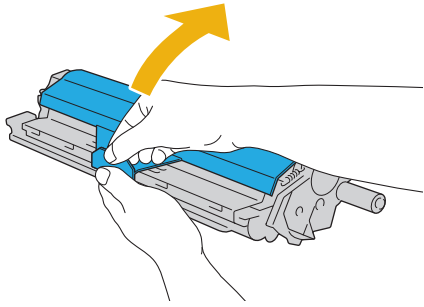
- 6 Support the drum cartridge with the other hand from underneath, and then pull it out completely.



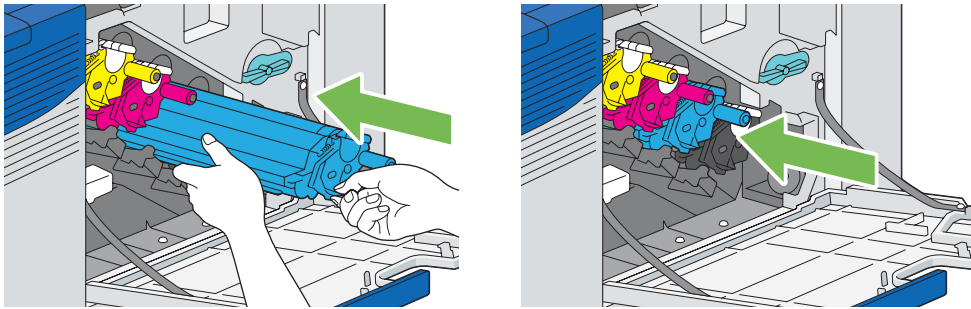
- 7 Repeat the steps 5 and 6 to remove the other three cartridges.

# Installing the Drum Cartridges

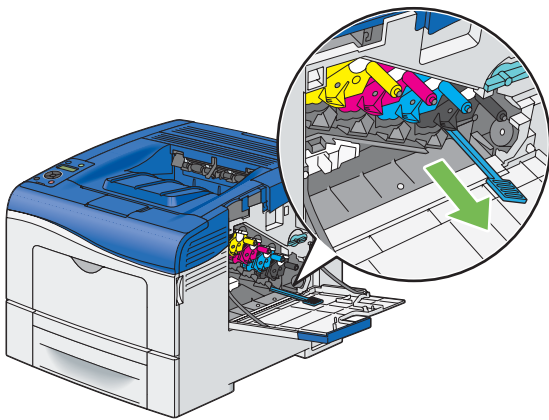
- 1 Unpack a new drum cartridge of the desired color.
- 2 Remove the orange protective cover from the drum cartridge.



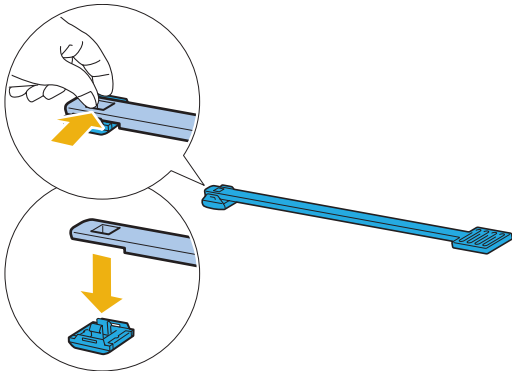
- 3 Insert the drum cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.



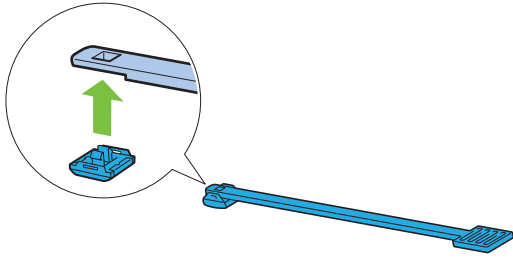
- 4 Repeat the steps 1 to 3 to insert the other three cartridges.
- 5 Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.



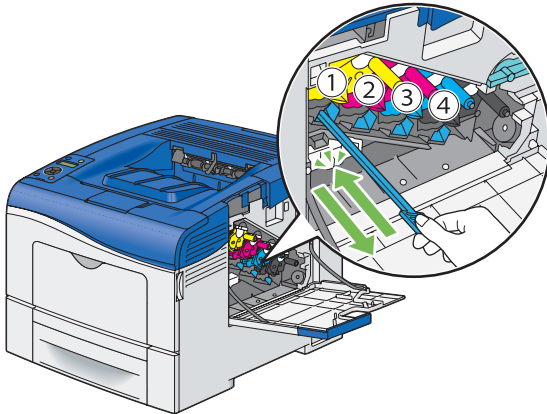
- 6 Remove the cleaning pad by pressing the white tabs between your thumb and index finger.



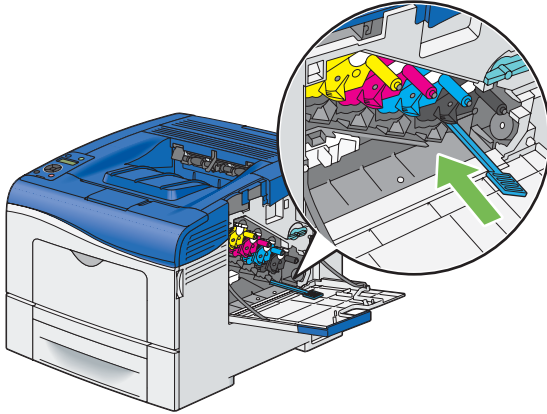
- 7 Unpack a new cleaning pad.
- 8 Attach the new cleaning pad to the cleaning rod.



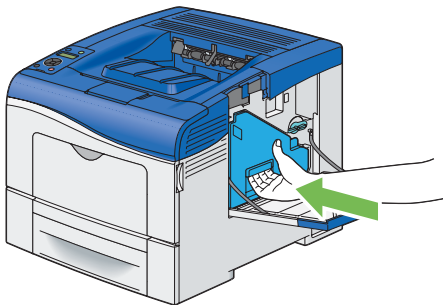
- 9 Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.



- 10 Repeat step 9 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.
- 11 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.



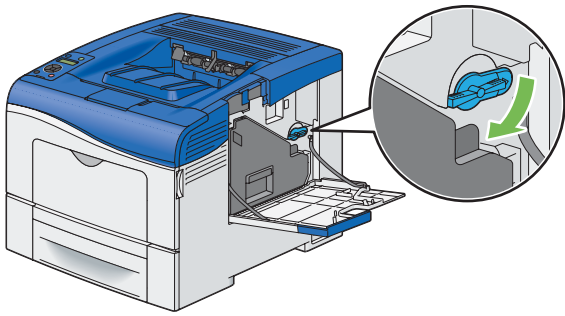
- 12 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.



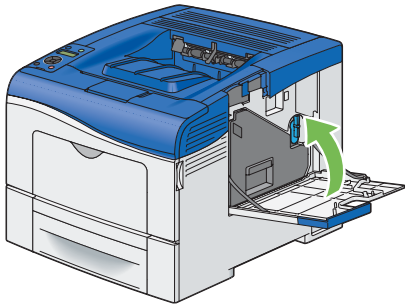
**NOTE:**

- If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the drum cartridges are fully inserted in the previous steps.

**13** Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



**14** Close the side cover.



## ■ Replacing the Fusing Unit

This section describes how to replace the fusing unit.

### IMPORTANT:

- Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in "Safety Notes" on page 13.

This section includes:

- "Removing the Fusing Unit" on page 267
- "Installing a Fusing Unit" on page 268

## Overview

When a fusing unit reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
Fusing Unit Life Replace	5,000 pages	The fusing unit is near the end of its life. Prepare a new one.
ChangeFusingUnit 010-351 Turn off and ChangeFusingUnit	-	The fusing unit has reached the end of its life. Replace the old fusing unit with a new one.

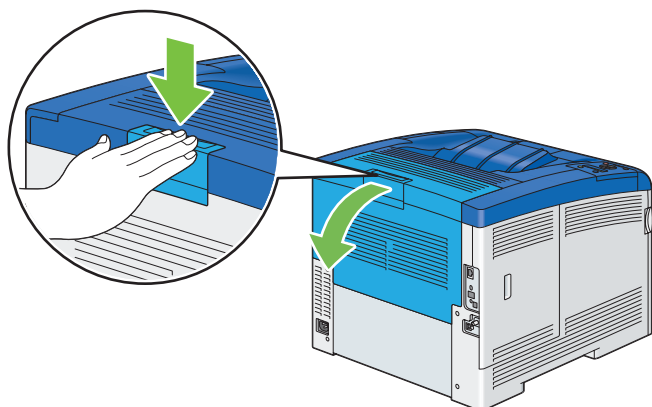
# Removing the Fusing Unit

- 1 Turn off the printer, and wait for 30 minutes.

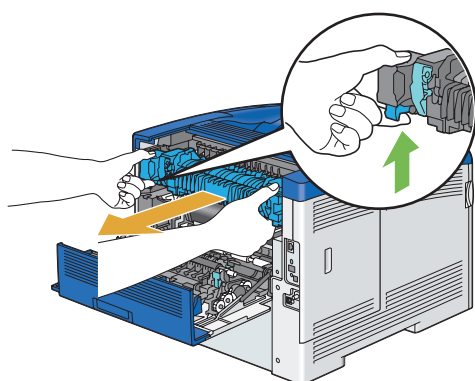
## IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

- 2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



- 3 Grasp the grips on both sides of the fusing unit with the lever under the left side grip squeezed, and then pull out the unit.

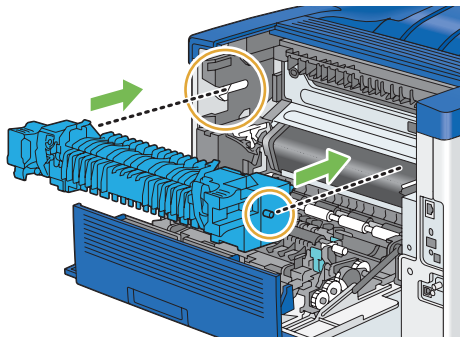


## Installing a Fusing Unit

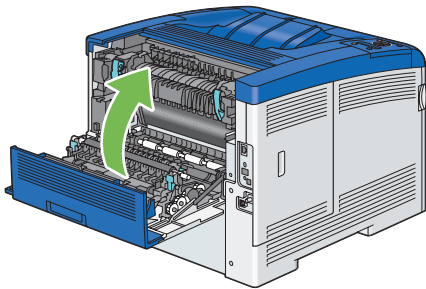
- 1 Unpack a new fusing unit.
- 2 Remove the packing material from the fusing unit.
- 3 Make sure that the two tabs of the fusing unit align with the grooves on the printer, and then insert it into the printer until it clicks.

### NOTE:

- Hold both sides of the fusing unit with your hands.
- Make sure that the fusing unit is firmly set in the slots and cannot be moved easily.



- 4 Close the rear cover.



- 5 Reconnect the power cord to the power connector and turn on the printer.



# ■ Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller

You need to replace three parts (belt unit, 2nd BTR, and retard roller) at a time. Both the 2nd BTR and the retard roller for replacement come with a new belt unit.

Fuji Xerox belt unit, 2nd BTR, and retard roller are available only through Fuji Xerox. To order by phone, see also ["Online Services" on page 301](#).

It is recommended that you use Fuji Xerox 2nd BTR, belt unit, and retard roller for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Fuji Xerox.

## IMPORTANT:


- Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the belt unit may reduce print quality.

This section includes:

- ["Removing the Belt Unit" on page 270](#)
- ["Installing a Belt Unit" on page 273](#)
- ["Removing the 2nd BTR" on page 274](#)
- ["Installing a 2nd BTR" on page 275](#)
- ["Removing the Retard Roller Unit in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray" on page 276](#)
- ["Installing a Retard Roller in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray" on page 277](#)

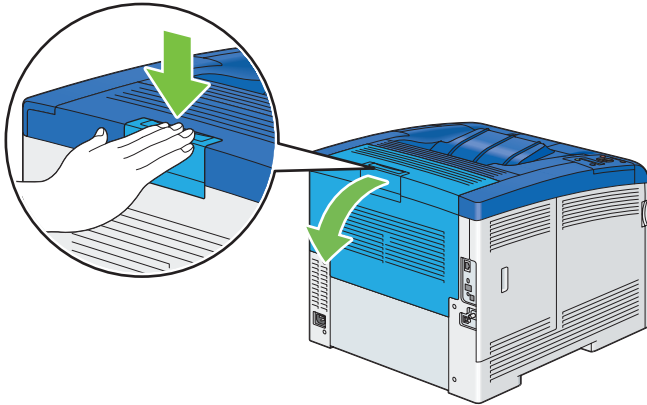
## Overview

When a belt unit reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

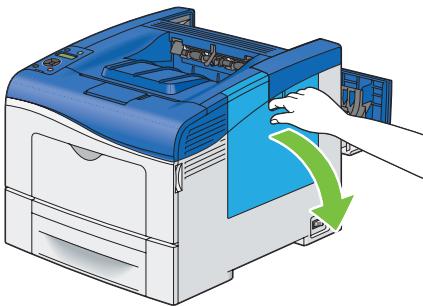
Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
TransferUnitLife Replace Soon	5,000 pages	The belt unit has become low. Prepare a new one.
Replace Transfer Unit	-	The belt unit has become empty. Replace the old belt unit with a new one. Press the  button to reset the belt unit counter.
Has Trans Unit been replaced?		

# Removing the Belt Unit

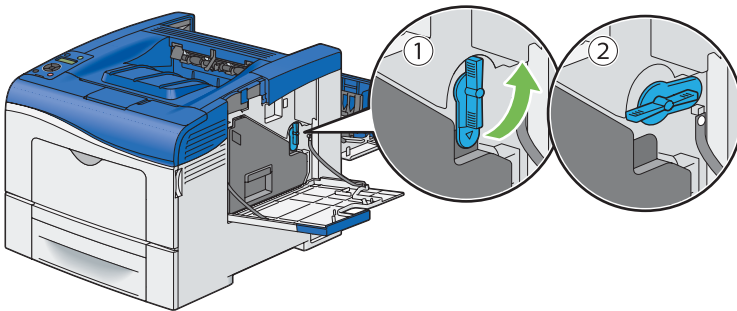
- 1 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



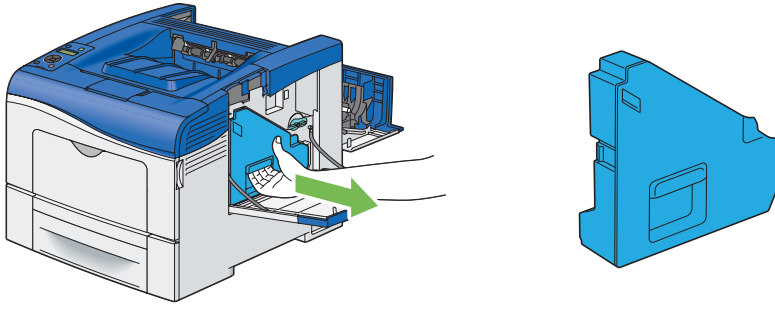
- 2 Open the side cover.



- 3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

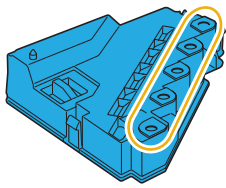


- 4 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

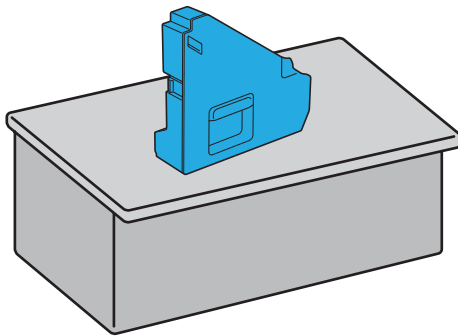


**NOTE:**

- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.

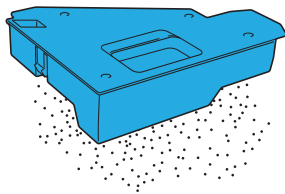


- 5 Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.

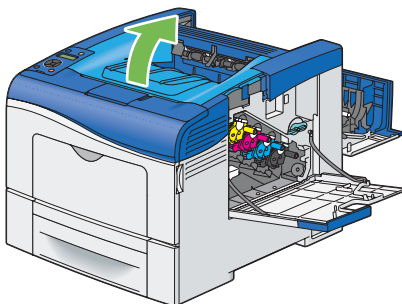


**IMPORTANT:**

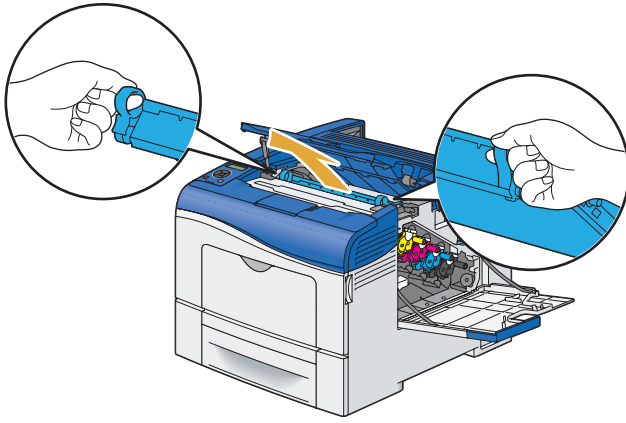
- Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



- 6 Open the top cover.



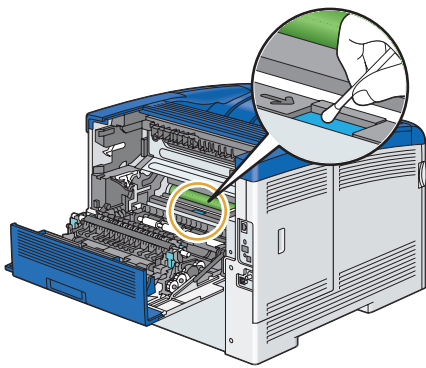
- 7 Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the belt unit, and then pull it out.



**IMPORTANT:**

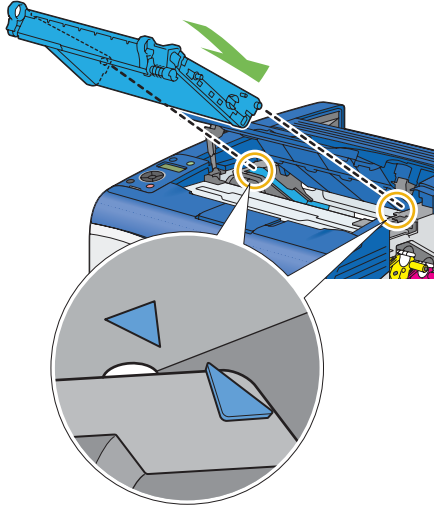
- If you cannot pull out the unit from the printer, make sure that all of the above procedures are performed properly.

- 8 At the rear of inside the printer, clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab.

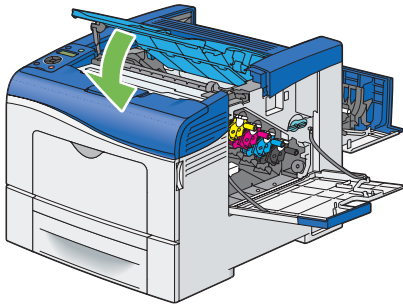


# Installing a Belt Unit

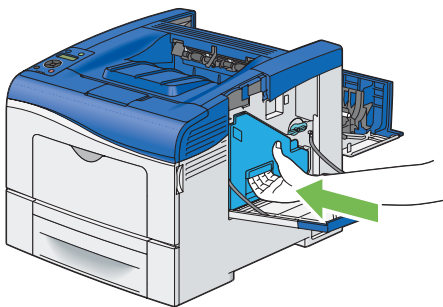
- 1 Unpack a new belt unit.
- 2 Remove the two orange packing materials first, and then the protective sheet from the belt unit.
- 3 Make sure that the arrow marks on the belt unit, and the printer face each other, and then insert the unit into the printer until it clicks.



- 4 Close the top cover.



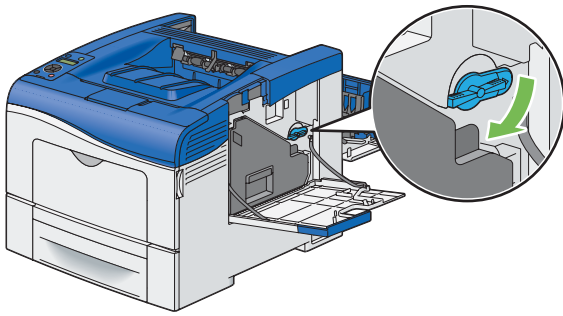
- 5 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.



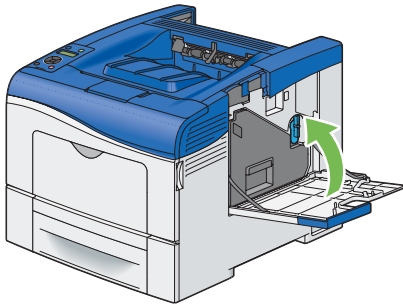
## NOTE:

- If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

- 6 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



- 7 Close the side cover.

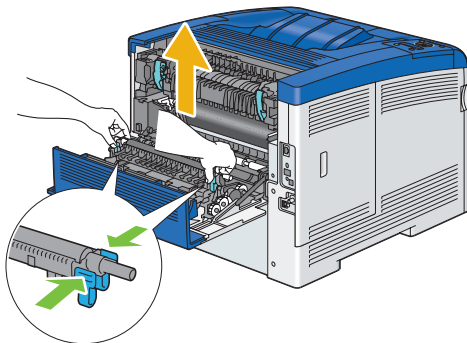


**NOTE:**

- After replacing the belt unit, be sure to initialize its life counter. For details, see ["Reset Trans Unit" on page 187](#).

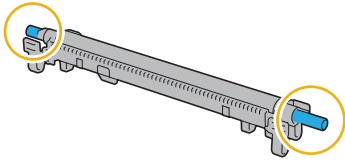
## Removing the 2nd BTR

- 1 Pinching the tabs on both sides of the 2nd BTR, lift it out of the printer.

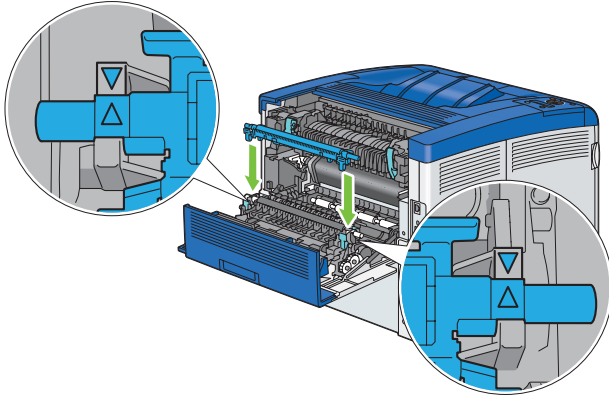


## Installing a 2nd BTR

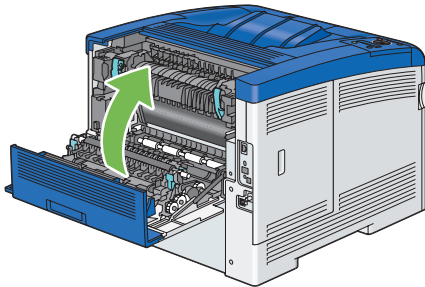
- 1 Unpack a new 2nd BTR.
- 2 Hold the 2nd BTR by its both ends.



- 3 Make sure that the arrow marks on the 2nd BTR and the printer face each other, and then press down the 2nd BTR until it clicks.

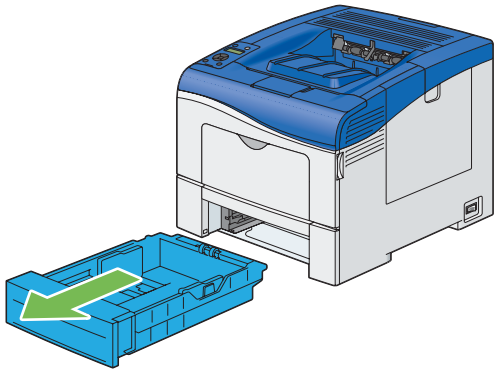


- 4 Close the rear cover.



# Removing the Retard Roller Unit in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray

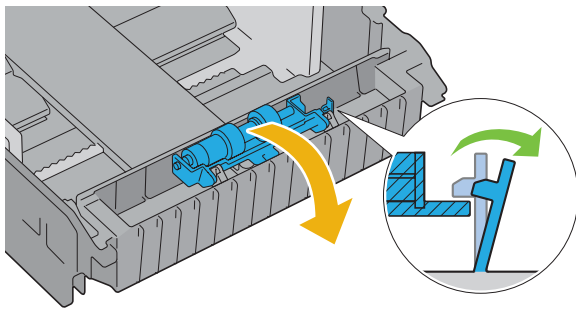
- 1 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



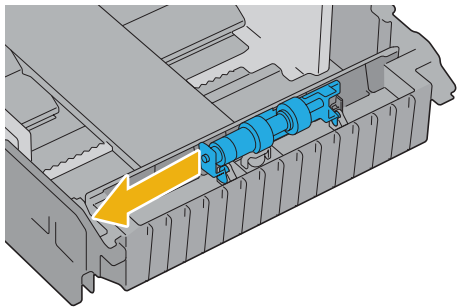
## NOTE:

- Ensure that you remove all the paper from the standard 550 sheet tray before removing the retard roller unit.

- 2 Slightly pressing down the lock lever on the standard 550 sheet tray to the right with one hand, raise the retard roller with the other hand.



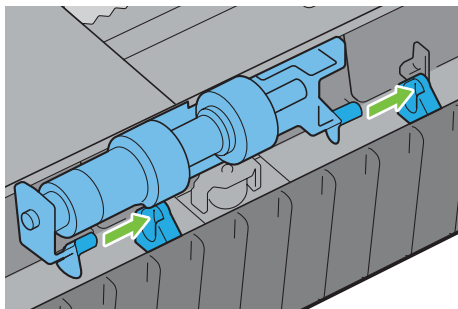
- 3 Slide the retard roller to the left to remove it from the standard 550 sheet tray.



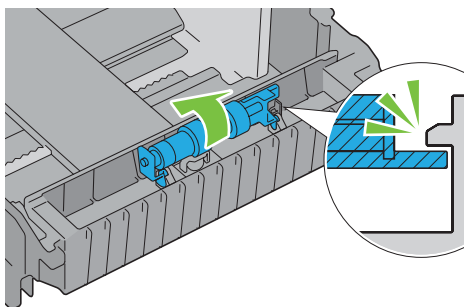


## Installing a Retard Roller in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray

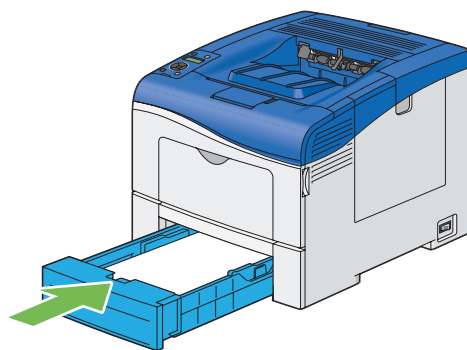
- 1 Slide the two axles of the retard roller into the holes on the standard 550 sheet tray.



- 2 Press down the retard roller until it snaps.



- 3 Load paper in the standard 550 sheet tray, and then insert the tray into the printer and push until it stops.



### IMPORTANT:

- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

# ■ Replacing the Waste Toner Box

## IMPORTANT:

- Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in "[Safety Notes](#)" on page 13.

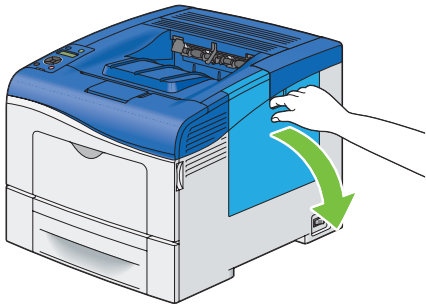
## Overview

When a waste toner box reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

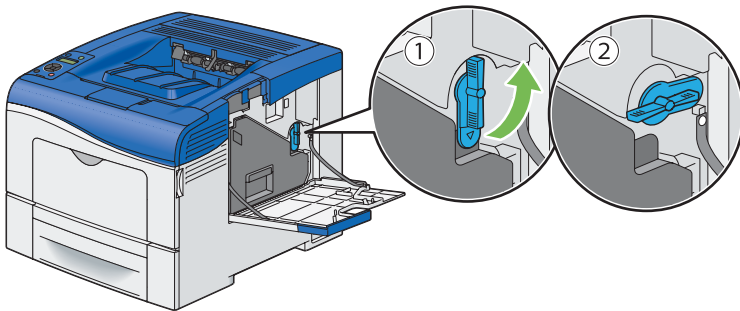
Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
Waste Toner Box Replace Soon	3,000 pages	The waste toner box has become low. Prepare a new one.
Replace Waste Toner Box	-	The waste toner box has become empty. Replace the old waste toner box with a new one.

# Removing the Waste Toner Box

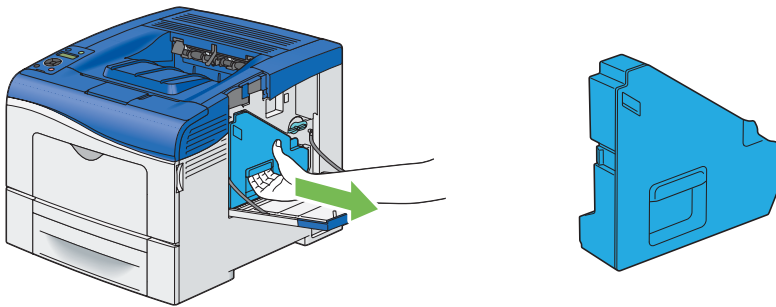
- 1 Open the side cover.



- 2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

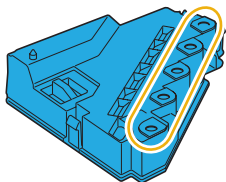


- 3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.



## NOTE:

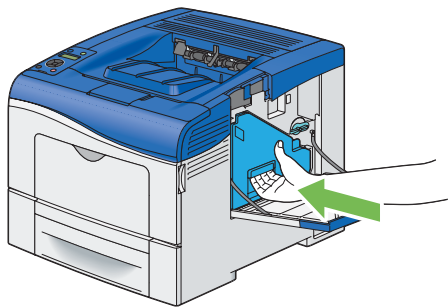
- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.



- 4 Insert the used waste toner box into the plastic bag that came with the new waste toner box and seal the bag.

## Installing a Waste Toner Box

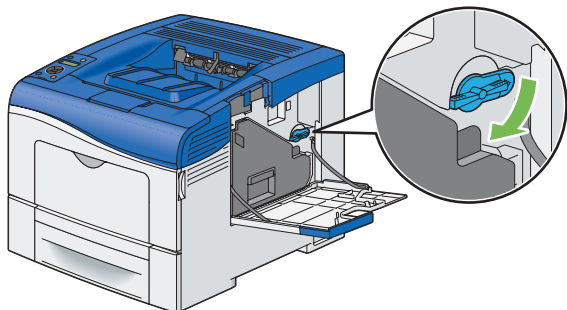
- 1 Unpack a new waste toner box.
- 2 Insert the waste toner box.



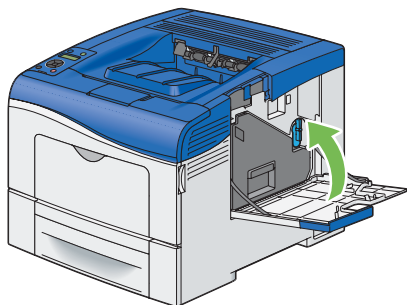
### NOTE:

- If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

- 3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



- 4 Close the side cover.



# Ordering Supplies

This section includes:

- ["Consumables" on page 281](#)
- ["When to Order Supplies" on page 282](#)
- ["Recycling Supplies" on page 282](#)

Certain consumables and routine maintenance items need to be ordered occasionally. Each supply includes installation instructions on the box.

## ■ Consumables

### IMPORTANT:

- Use of consumables/periodical replacement parts not recommended by Fuji Xerox can impair machine quality and performance. Use only consumables/periodical replacement parts recommended by Fuji Xerox.

Product Name	Product Code	Printable number of pages
Toner Cartridge Std (K)	CT202018	7,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Std (C)	CT202019	5,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Std (M)	CT202020	5,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Std (Y)	CT202021	5,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (K)	CT202033	11,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (C)	CT202034	11,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (M)	CT202035	11,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (Y)	CT202036	11,000 pages
Drum Cartridge kit	CT350983	60,000 pages
Fusing Unit (220V)	EL500270	100,000 pages
Fusing Unit (110V)	EL500269	100,000 pages
100K Maintenance Kit	EL500267	100,000 pages
Waste Toner Cartridge	EL500268	30,000 pages

### IMPORTANT:

- Toner

Reference values are measured based on ISO/IEC19798. Actual replacement cycles depend on printing conditions, output contents, paper size and type, and environment.

- Drum

The number of printed pages is a reference value based on A4-size one-sided printing of an average of three continuous sheets per print job. The actual number of printable pages depends on the conditions defined above, in addition to the number of continuous prints, paper size, paper type, paper feed direction, paper tray and output tray settings, monochrome/color auto selection \*, other mode selections, the initialization operation performed when the printer power is turned on or off, adjustments to maintain print quality, and other operating environment conditions. Certain conditions may result in actual values that are half those shown in the table. The values presented here are for reference only.

\* When [Color] is selected on the printer, certain data may use the color drum even when printing a monochrome page.

## ■ When to Order Supplies

The LCD panel displays a warning when the supply nears its replacement time. Verify that you have replacements on hand. It is important to order these supplies when the messages first appear to avoid interruptions to your printing. The LCD panel displays an error message when the supply must be replaced.

For details on error message about replacing the toner cartridge, drum cartridge, fusing unit, belt unit, or waste toner box, see ["Replacing Consumables" on page 256](#).

To order supplies, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

### **IMPORTANT:**

- This printer is designed to provide the most stable performance and print quality when used with the recommended consumables. Not using consumables recommended for this machine degrades the performance and printing quality of the printer. You could also incur charges if the machine breaks down. To receive customer support and achieve the optimum performance of the printer, be sure to use recommended consumables.

## ■ Recycling Supplies

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.
- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors). Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

# Storing Print Media

---

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do:

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 70 °F/21 °C and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

# Storing Consumables

---

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 104 °F/40 °C.
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- A humid environment.



# Managing the Printer

---

This section includes:

- ["Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services" on page 285](#)
- ["Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 285](#)

## ■ Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services

When the printer is installed in a TCP/IP environment, you can use CentreWare Internet Services to check the printer status, the remaining volume of consumables, and the paper loaded in this printer. You can also use CentreWare Internet Services to configure printer settings.

### NOTE:

- When using the printer as a local printer, you cannot use CentreWare Internet Services. For details about checking the status of a local printer, refer to ["Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 285](#).

## Starting CentreWare Internet Services

Use the following procedure to start CentreWare Internet Services.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address in the browser's address field, and then press the **Enter** key.  
The CentreWare Internet Services screen appears.

### • Using Online Help

For details regarding the items that can be set in each CentreWare Internet Services screen, click the **Help** button to display the online Help.

## ■ Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

SimpleMonitor is a tool that is installed with your Fuji Xerox print driver. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. SimpleMonitor can also check the status of the tray and remaining amount of consumables, such as the toner cartridge.

## Starting SimpleMonitor

Double-click the SimpleMonitor icon on the taskbar or right-click the icon and select **Select Printer**.

If the SimpleMonitor icon is not displayed on the taskbar, open SimpleMonitor from the **Start** menu:

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **SimpleMonitor for Asia-Pacific** → **Activate SimpleMonitor**.  
The **Select Printer** window appears.
- 2 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.
- 3 The **Status Monitor** window appears.

For details about the functions of SimpleMonitor, refer to the online Help.

# Conserving Supplies

---

You can change several settings in your print driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

The following descriptions use the PCL 6 driver as an example.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	<b>Toner Saver</b> in the <b>Image Options</b> tab	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. The image quality will be lower when this feature is used.
Print media	<b>Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)</b> in the <b>Layout/Watermark</b> tab	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. Values for <b>Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)</b> are <b>1-Up, 2-Up, 4-Up, 8-Up, 16-Up, 32-Up</b> . Combined with the duplex setting, <b>Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)</b> allows you to print up to 64 pages on one sheet of paper. (32 images on the front and 32 on the back)

# Checking Page Counts

---

The total number of printed pages can be checked at the operator panel. Four meters are available: Meter 1, Meter 2, Meter 3, and Meter 4.



The Meter Readings counts the number of pages printed properly. Single side color print (including Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)) is counted as one job, and 2-sided print (including Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)) is counted as two. During 2-sided printing, if an error occurs after one side is printed properly, it is counted as one.

When printing color data, which has been converted by using ICC profile on an application, with the Color (Auto) setting, the data is printed by color even if it seems to be black and white data on the monitor. In that case, Meter 1 and Meter 4 are increased.

When doing 2-sided printing, a blank page may be inserted automatically depending on the settings of the application. In this case, the blank page is counted as one page.

For information about the individual meter, see ["Meter Readings" on page 165](#).

Use the following procedure to check a meter:

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Select Meter Readings, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired meter to check the number of pages.

# Moving the Printer

---

This section describes how to move the printer.

## NOTE:

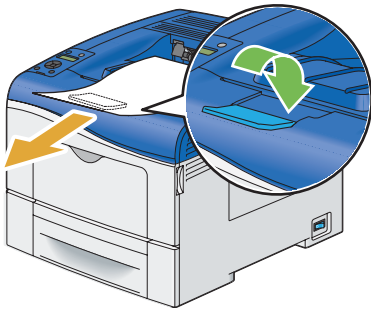
- If the optional 550 sheet feeder has been installed, uninstall the optional 550 sheet feeder before moving the printer. If the optional 550 sheet feeder is not fixed securely to the printer, it may fall to the ground and cause injuries. For details on how to uninstall the optional 550 sheet feeder, see ["Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 292](#).

- 1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and any other cables.

## IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

- 2 Remove any paper in the output tray and return the output tray extension.



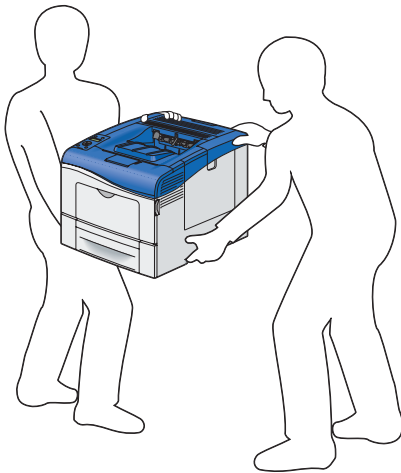
- 3 Lift the printer and move it gently.

## IMPORTANT:

- When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in ["Machine Installation" on page 16](#).

## NOTE:

- If you move the printer over a long distance, remove the toner cartridges from the printer to prevent toner from spilling, and pack the printer inside a box.



- 4 Adjust the color registration before using your printer.

## See also:

- ["Adjusting Color Registration" on page 235](#)

# Removing Options

If the printer location needs to be changed or the printer and print media handling options need to be shipped to a new location, all print media handling options must be removed from the printer. For shipping, pack the printer and print media handling options securely to avoid damage.

This section includes:

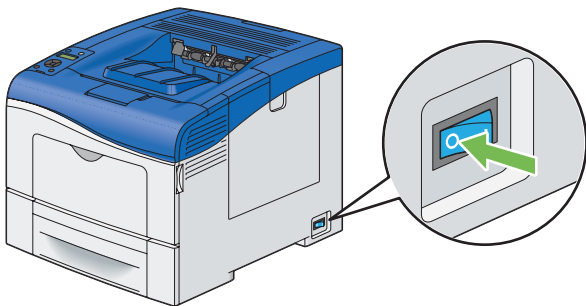
- "Removing the Optional 512MB Memory" on page 289
- "Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 292
- "Removing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 294
- "Removing the Optional Hard Disk Unit" on page 296

## ■ Removing the Optional 512MB Memory

### IMPORTANT:

- When you remove the optional 512MB memory, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before starting these tasks.

- 1 Turn off the printer.



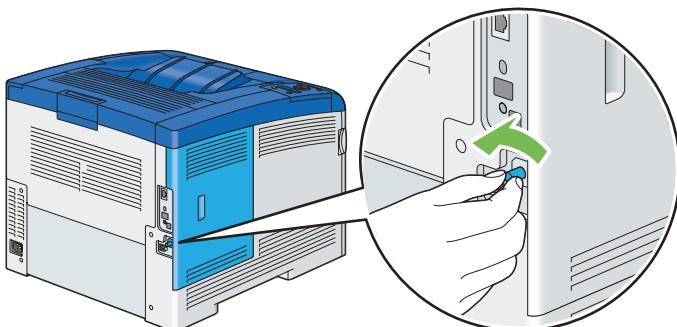
### IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

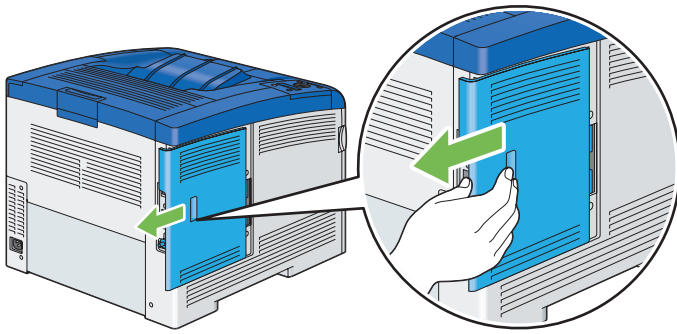
- 2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.

### NOTE:

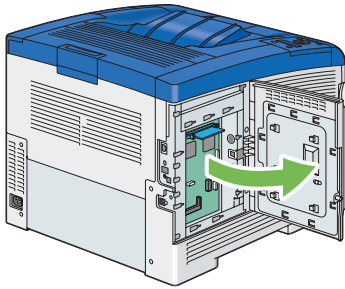
- Loosen the screw. You do not need to remove the screw.



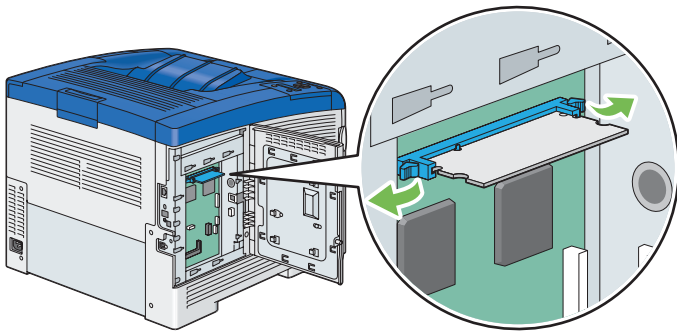
**3** Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.



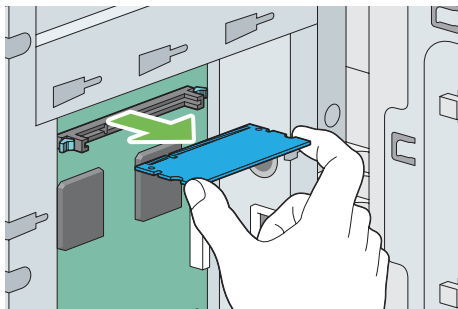
**4** Open the control board cover completely.



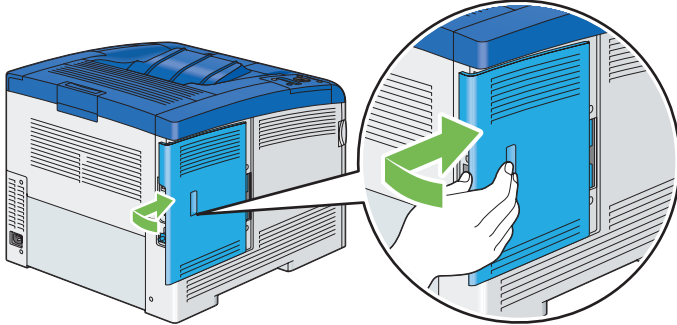
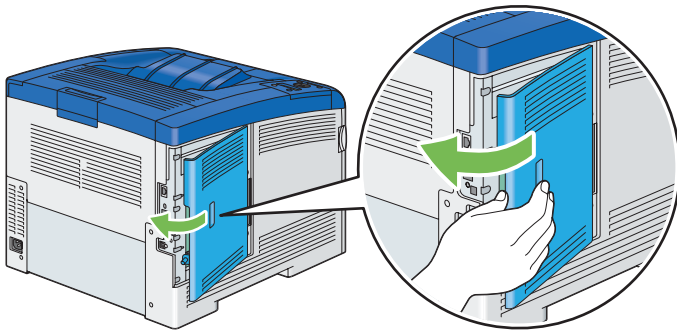
**5** Push the clips on both sides of the slot outward to raise the optional 512MB memory up.



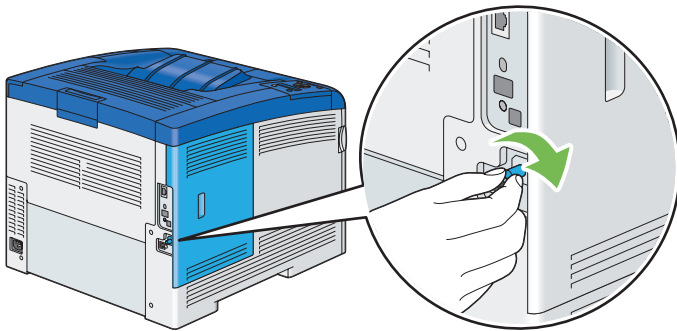
**6** Hold the optional 512MB memory and pull it straight out.



**7** Close the control board cover, and slide it towards the front of the printer.



**8** Turn the screw clockwise.



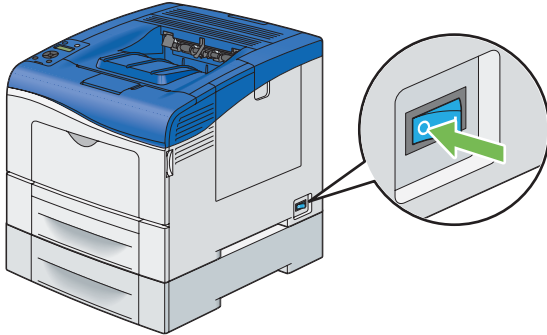
**9** Turn on the printer.

## ■ Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

### IMPORTANT:

- When you remove the optional 550 sheet feeder (Tray2), be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

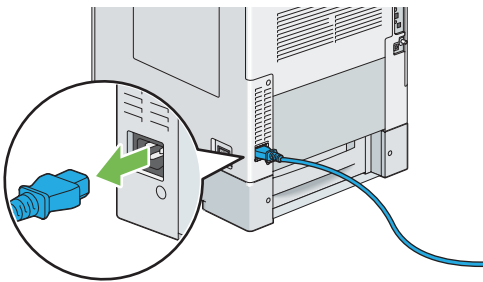
- 1 Turn off the printer.



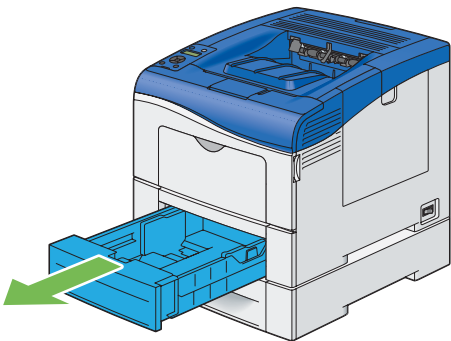
### IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

- 2 Disconnect the power cord from the power connector on the rear of the printer.

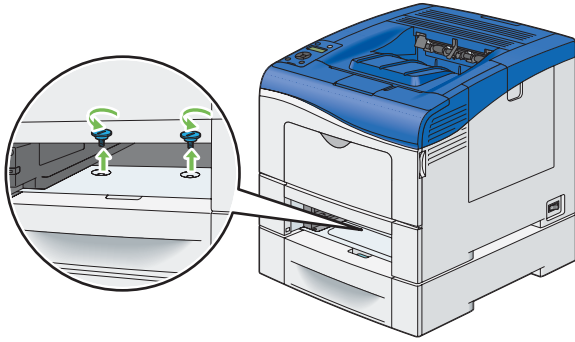


- 3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.





- 4 Remove the two screws joining the printer and the optional 550 sheet feeder by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.



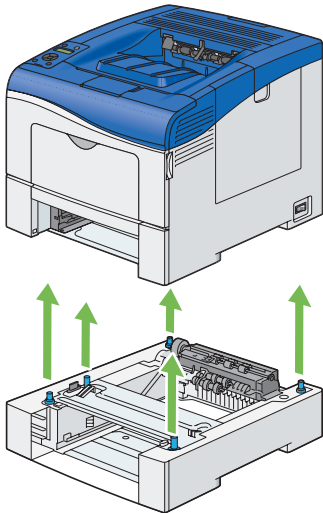
**NOTE:**

- The screw hole is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

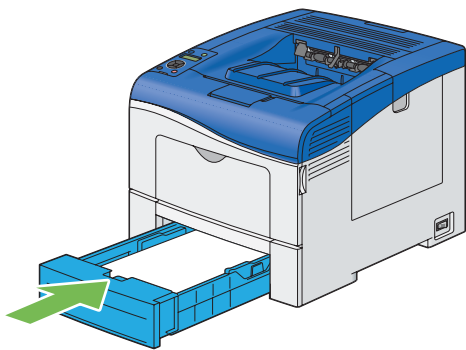
- 5 Gently lift the printer off the optional 550 sheet feeder, and place it on a level surface.

**IMPORTANT:**

- When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in ["Machine Installation" on page 16](#)



- 6 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



**IMPORTANT:**

- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

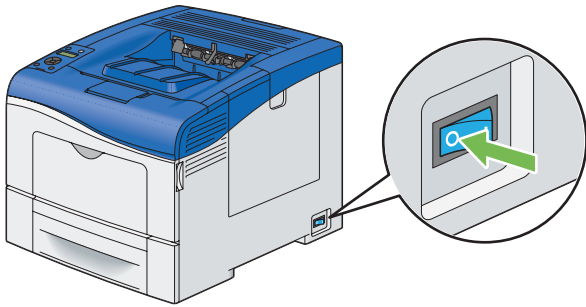
- 7 Reconnect all cables into the rear of the printer and turn on the printer.

# ■ Removing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

## IMPORTANT:

- If you remove the optional wireless printer adapter, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before removing the adapter.

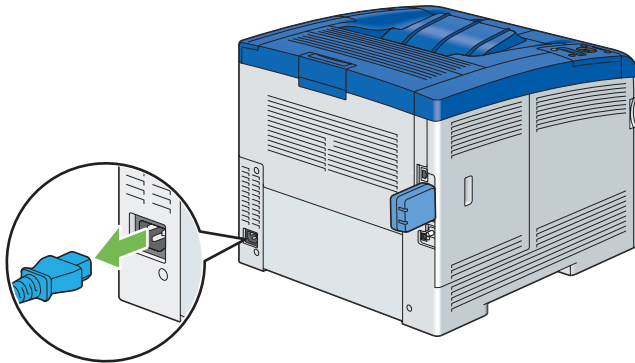
- 1 Turn off the printer.



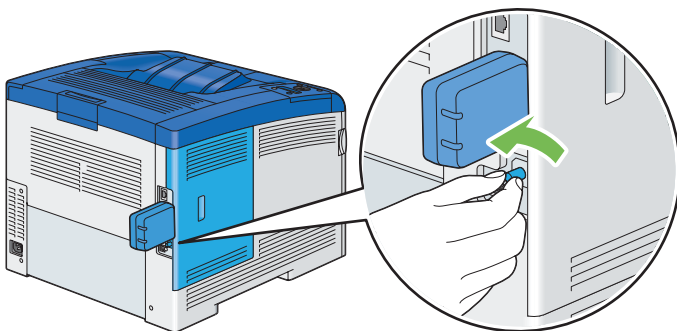
## IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

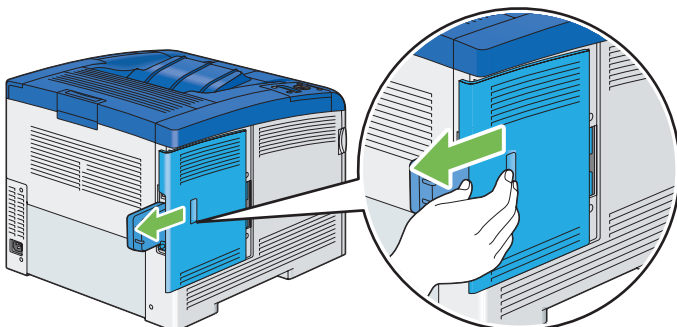
- 2 Disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer.



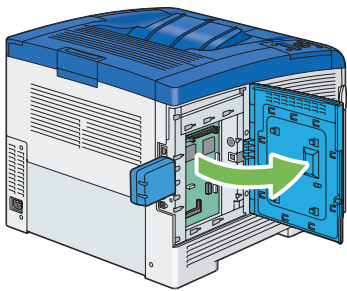
- 3 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.



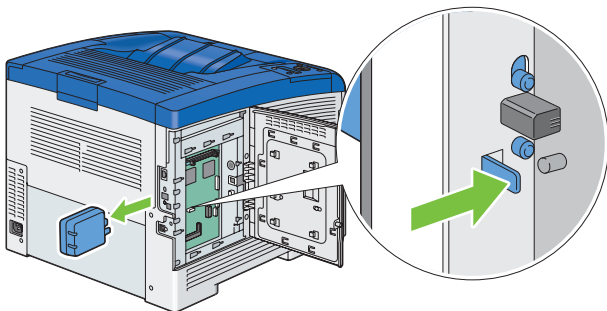
- 4 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.



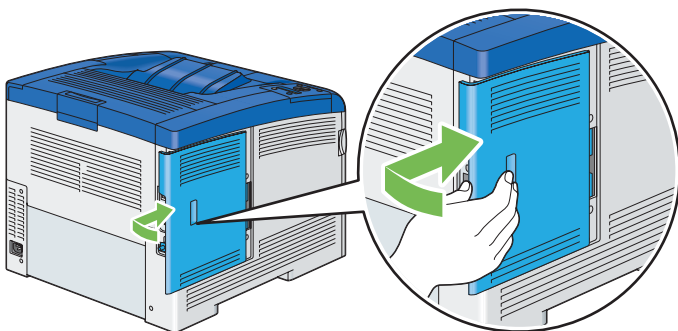
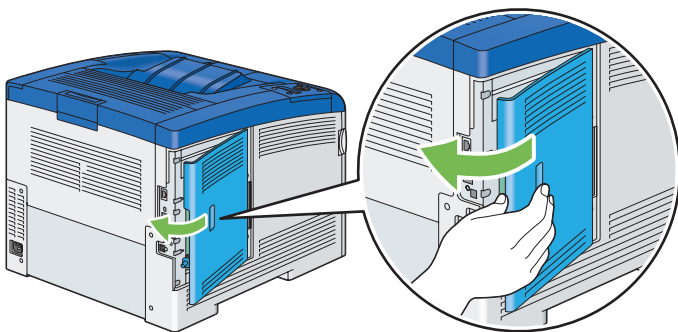
- 5 Open the control board cover completely.



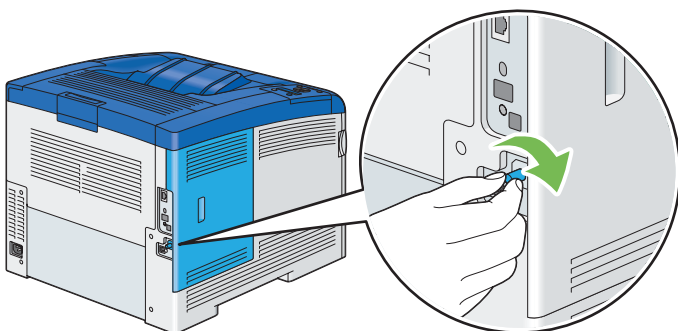
- 6 Remove the wireless printer adapter from the printer by releasing the adapter's hook while pushing the wireless printer adapter towards the front of the printer.



- 7 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.



- 8 Turn the screw clockwise.



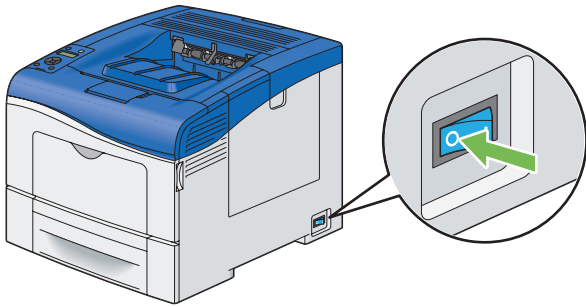
- 9 Turn on the printer.

## ■ Removing the Optional Hard Disk Unit

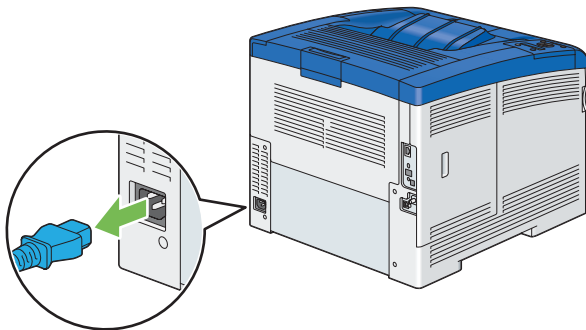
### IMPORTANT:

- If you remove the optional hard disk unit, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before removing the hard disk unit.

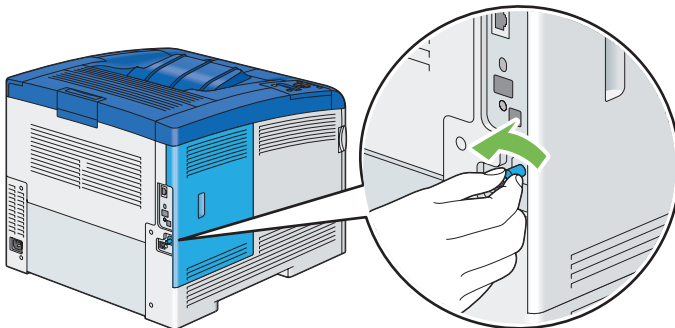
- 1 Turn off the printer.



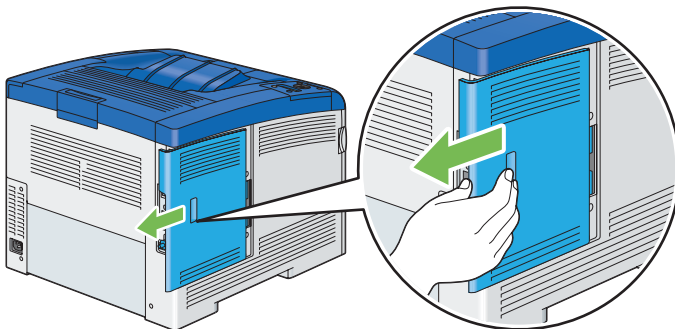
- 2 Disconnect the power cord from the power source.



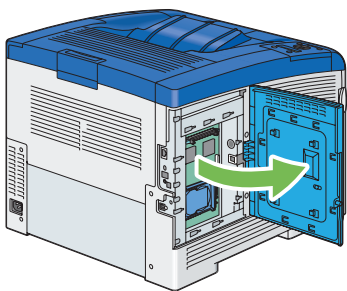
- 3 Turn the screw on the control board counterclockwise.



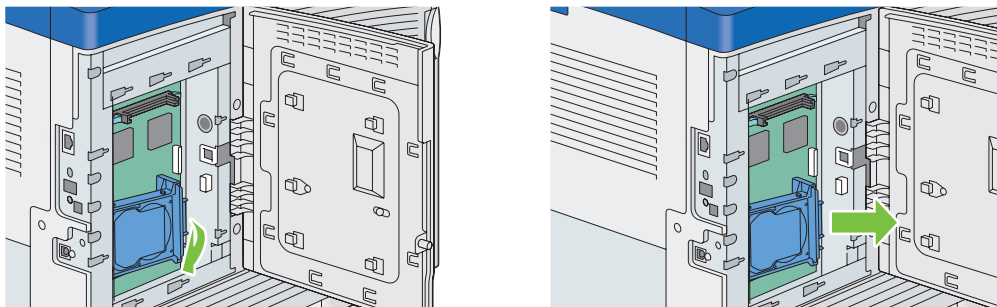
- 4 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.



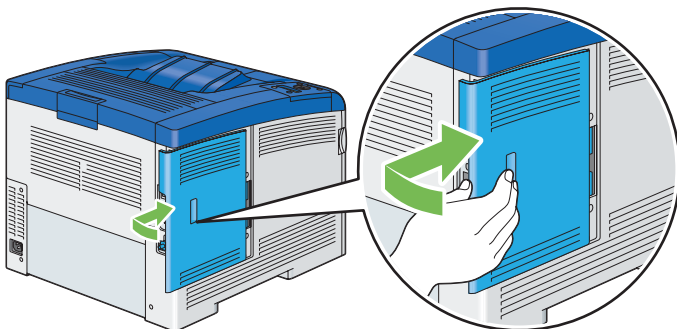
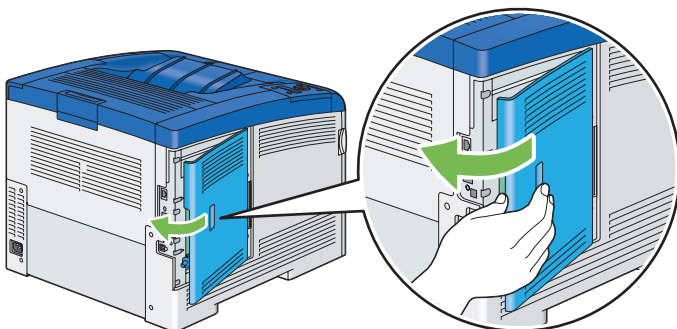
- 5 Open the control board cover completely.



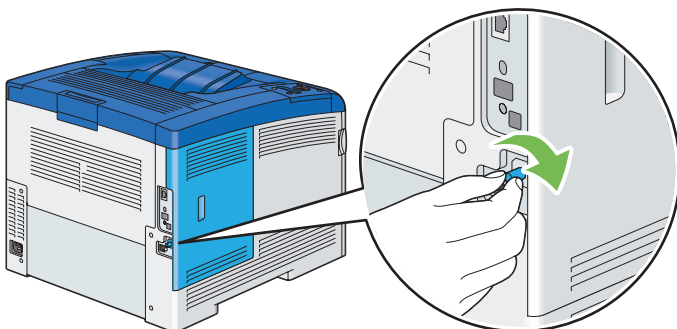
- 6 Remove the hard disk unit from the printer by releasing the hook of hard disk unit.



- 7 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.



- 8 Turn the screw clockwise.



- 9 Turn on the printer.



# Contacting Fuji Xerox

This chapter includes:

- ["Technical Support" on page 300](#)
- ["Online Services" on page 301](#)

# Technical Support

---

Fuji Xerox recommends the Customer first utilize support materials shipped with the product, product diagnostics, information contained on the Web, and email support. If unsuccessful, to obtain service under product warranty the Customer must notify Fuji Xerox Telephone Support or its authorized service representative of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period. Customer will provide appropriate assistance to Telephone Support personnel to resolve issues, such as restoration of the operating system, software program and drivers to their default configuration and settings, verification of functionality of Fuji Xerox supplied products, replacement of customer replaceable units, clearing paper misfeeds and cleaning the unit and other prescribed routine and preventative maintenance.

If the Customer's product contains features that enable Fuji Xerox or its authorised service representative to diagnose and repair problems with the product remotely, Fuji Xerox may request that the Customer allow such remote access to the product.



# Online Services

---

You can find detail Product and Consumable warranty information and activate your warranty by registering your details on our website at <http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/>

Fuji Xerox Online Support Assistant provides instructions and troubleshooting guides to resolve your printer problems. It is an easy-to-use, searchable online help. To find out more, please visit our online support at <http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/>



# Index

## Numerics

2nd BTR .....	33
2-Sided .....	167
2-Sided Print .....	136, 170
2-Sided Print, Flip on Short Edge .....	136
2-Sided Report .....	182
802.1x .....	178

## A

Adjust Altitude .....	188
Adjust BTR .....	185
Adjust ColorRegi .....	187
Adjust FusingUnit .....	186
Adjust PaperType .....	185
Adjusting color registration .....	235
Admin Menu .....	165
Adobe Protocol .....	178, 179
AirPrint .....	145
Assigning an IP address (for IPv4 mode) .....	71
Audio Tones .....	181
Auditron .....	144
Auditron Mode .....	183
Auto Adjust Regi .....	186
Auto Job History .....	182
Auto Reset .....	180
Avoiding jams .....	200

## B

Banner Sheet .....	183
Basic printer problems .....	215
Belt unit .....	32
Booklet Print .....	136
Bypass Tray .....	191
Bypass tray .....	32, 201

## C

Canceling a print job .....	130
-----------------------------	-----

Canceling print job	
From operator panel .....	130
From your computer .....	130
CentreWare Internet Services .....	61
Managing printer .....	285
Online help for .....	285
Starting .....	285
Checking page counts .....	287
Checking printed pages	
How to check the meter .....	287
Checking status of print data .....	145
Cleaning inside the printer .....	248
Cleaning the CTD sensor .....	248
Clear JobHistory .....	187
Clear Storage .....	188
Clearing paper jam .....	200
From bypass tray .....	202
From fusing unit .....	206
From optional 550 sheet feeder .....	209
From standard 550 sheet tray .....	204
Clock Settings .....	180
Collated .....	171
Color registration chart .....	235
Connecting local printer .....	68
Connecting printer .....	67
Connection specification .....	67
Connection type .....	67
Conserving supplies .....	286
Consumables .....	281
Contacting Fuji Xerox .....	299
Contacting service .....	244
ContentsBridge Utility .....	133
Control board .....	33
Control board cover .....	33
CTD sensor .....	248

## D

Data Encryption .....	189
DefaultPaperSize .....	181
Demo Page .....	165

Determining values .....	236
Digital certificate problem .....	239
Disabling the Panel Lock .....	196
Display problems .....	216
Draft Mode .....	169
Drum cartridge .....	32
Duplex printing .....	135
Duplexer .....	33
Dynamic methods of setting the printer's IP address .....	70

## E

Electrical safety .....	14
Enabling the Panel Lock .....	196
Entering values .....	238
Error History .....	164
Error LED .....	34
Error-code .....	242
Ethernet .....	173
Ethernet port .....	33, 67
Exit button .....	34

## F

F/W Version .....	184
Fast scan .....	236
Fault Time-out .....	180
Font .....	167
Font Pitch .....	168
Font Size .....	168
Form Line .....	168
Format HDD .....	188
Front cover .....	32
Fusing unit .....	33, 201
FW Download Mode .....	184

## G

Getting help .....	245
SimpleMonitor alerts .....	245

## H

HDD Over Write .....	189
----------------------	-----

Hex Dump .....	169
How to check the meter .....	287
How to install option .....	35
How to remove option .....	289
How to replace the belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller .....	269

## I

Ignore FormFeed .....	170
Image Enhance .....	169
Init Print Meter .....	187
Initialize NVM .....	178, 187
Installing a belt unit .....	273
Installing a retard roller .....	277
Installing a toner cartridge .....	258
Installing a waste toner box .....	280
Installing optional accessories .....	35
Installing print driver	
Print driver (Linux) .....	96
Print driver (Mac OS X) .....	95
Print driver (Windows) .....	73
Installing the drum cartridges .....	263
Installing the fusing unit .....	268
Installing the optional 512MB memory .....	35
Installing the optional 550 sheet feeder .....	40
Installing the optional wireless printer adapter .....	45
IP Filter .....	178
IP Mode .....	176
IPsec .....	176
IPv4 .....	176

## J

Jam problems .....	211
Job History .....	164
Job Time-out .....	180

## L

Landscape .....	167
Lattice pattern .....	237
Layout .....	171

LCD panel .....	34
Messages .....	245
Left/Right buttons .....	34
LetterH Dup Mode .....	184
LineTermination .....	169
Linking trays .....	127
Loading envelope	
Bypass tray .....	125
Loading letterhead	
Bypass tray .....	126
Optional 550 sheet feeder .....	123
Standard 550 sheet tray .....	123
Loading print media .....	120
Bypass tray .....	124
Optional 550 sheet feeder .....	121
Standard 550 sheet tray .....	121
Login Error .....	190
Low Toner Msg .....	184

## M

Main components .....	32
Maintenance .....	247
Maintenance Mode .....	184
Managing	
Printer .....	285
Menu button .....	34
Messages	
LCD panel .....	245
SimpleMonitor .....	245
Meter Readings .....	165
Meter readings	
Total printed pages .....	287
mm / inch .....	181
Moving	
Printer .....	288
Multiple-up .....	286

## N

Network connection setup .....	78
Network Setup .....	173
No Acct User Prt .....	184
Noise .....	234
Non-Genuine .....	188

Non-Genuine mode .....	246
------------------------	-----

## O

Obtaining the product information .....	245
OK button .....	34
Online services .....	301
Operator panel .....	32, 34
Optional 550 sheet feeder .....	32, 201
Ordering supplies .....	281
Orientation .....	167
Other problems .....	241
Output Color .....	170, 171, 172
Output Size .....	166

## P

Panel Lock .....	189, 196
Panel Settings .....	164
Panel Settings page .....	56
Paper jam location .....	201
Paper Select Mode .....	172
Paper Tray .....	165
Parts name .....	32
Password .....	171
PCL Fonts List .....	164
PCL Macros List .....	164
PCL Settings .....	165
PDF Fonts List .....	164
PDF Settings .....	170
Peer-to-peer .....	90
Point and print .....	86
Port Status .....	179
Portrait .....	167
Power connector .....	33
Power Saver mode .....	57
Power Saver Time .....	179, 197
Power switch .....	32

Print driver (Linux)	
Installing print driver .....	96
Print driver (Mac OS X)	
Installing print driver .....	95
Print driver (Windows)	
Installing print driver .....	73
Print driver pre-install status .....	73
Print ID .....	182
Print media .....	286
Bypass tray .....	116
Dimensions .....	120
Optional 550 sheet feeder .....	117
Standard 550 sheet tray .....	117
Print Meter .....	165
Print Mode .....	170
Print quality problems .....	218
Print Text .....	182
Printer	
Managing .....	285
Moving .....	288
Printer connection and software installation	
.....	65
Printer Settings .....	164
Printer settings .....	147
Printer software .....	59
Printer status	
Checking with SimpleMonitor .....	285
Printing .....	129
Printing a report page .....	72, 146
Printing basics .....	113
Printing custom size paper .....	140
Printing on custom size paper	
With Mac OS X print driver .....	143
With Windows print driver .....	142
Printing PDF files using PDF Bridge .....	133
Printing problems .....	217
Problems with installed optional accessories	
.....	240
Product features .....	26
Protocol .....	177
PS Error Report .....	172
PS Fonts List .....	164
PS Job Time-out .....	172

PS Settings .....	172
-------------------	-----

## Q

Quantity .....	169, 170
----------------	----------

## R

RAM Disk .....	183
Ready LED .....	34
Rear cover .....	33
Recycling supplies .....	282
Removing options .....	289
Removing paper jam .....	200
From bypass tray .....	202
From fusing unit .....	206
From optional 550 sheet feeder .....	209
From standard 550 sheet tray .....	204
Removing the belt unit .....	270
Removing the drum cartridges .....	261
Removing the fusing unit .....	267
Removing the optional 512MB memory	
.....	289
Removing the optional 550 sheet feeder	
.....	292
Removing the optional hard disk unit .....	296
Removing the optional wireless printer	
adapter .....	294
Removing the retard roller unit .....	276
Removing the toner cartridge .....	258
Removing the waste toner box .....	279
Replacing the belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the	
retard roller .....	269
Replacing the drum cartridges .....	260
Replacing the fusing unit .....	266
Replacing the toner cartridges .....	257
Replacing the waste toner box .....	278
Report / List .....	164
Reset Trans Unit .....	187
Reset Wireless .....	175
Resetting to factory defaults .....	198

## S

Safety	
Electrical .....	14
Sample Print .....	131
Secure Print .....	131
Secure Settings .....	189
Selecting options (Mac OS X) .....	139
Selecting options (Windows) .....	137
Selecting printing options .....	137
Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows) .....	137
Sending print job .....	129
Setting paper sizes .....	128
Setting paper types .....	128
Setting the IP address .....	69
Setup Disk Creation Tool .....	63
Shared printing .....	84
Side cover .....	32
SimpleMonitor .....	62
Alerts .....	245
Slow scan .....	237
Specification .....	27
Standard 550 sheet tray .....	32, 201
Stop button .....	34
Stored Documents .....	165
Stored print .....	131
Storing consumables .....	284
Storing print media .....	283
Straightest lines .....	236
Substitute Tray .....	183
Supplies	
Recycling .....	282
When to order .....	282
Supported print media .....	116
Symbol Set .....	168
System Settings .....	179

## T

TCP/IP .....	175
TCP/IP and IP addresses .....	69
Technical support .....	300
Toner cartridge .....	32

Tray Priority .....	195
Tray Settings .....	190
Tray1 .....	193
Tray2 .....	194
Troubleshooting .....	199

## U

Up/Down buttons .....	34
Usable print media .....	116
USB connection setup .....	75
USB port .....	33, 67
USB Settings .....	178
Using 2-Sided Print .....	135
Using digital certificates .....	150
Using the bypass tray .....	126

## V

Verifying the IP settings .....	72
---------------------------------	----

## W

Wake Up button .....	34
Waste toner box .....	32
Web Services on Devices .....	148
When to order supplies .....	282
Width guides .....	122
Wired network connection .....	68
Wireless adapter socket .....	33, 67
Wireless network connection .....	68
Wireless printer adapter .....	294
Wireless Setup .....	174
Wireless Status .....	173
WSD .....	148







## DocuPrint CP405 d User Guide

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

ME5568E2-2 (Edition 1)

December 2012

Copyright© 2012 by Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.